



Forest Stewardship Council®



# The FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard of Russian Federation



**Photo Credit**

From Left to Right:

Photo 1: Wild strawberry in the Arhangelsk region (FSC Russia)

Photo 2: Forestry worker (FSC Russia)

Photo 3: FSC certified logs in Karelia Republic (FSC Russia)

**NOTE ON THIS ENGLISH VERSION:**

This is the official version of the National Forest Stewardship Standard that is approved by FSC International, and it is available at [ic.fsc.org](http://ic.fsc.org). Any translation of this version is not an official translation approved by FSC International. If there is any conflict or inconsistency between the approved English version and any translated version, the English version shall prevail.



<b>Title</b>	The FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard of Russian Federation
<b>Document reference code</b>	FSC-STD-RUS-02.1-2020 EN
<b>Status</b>	Approved
<b>Scope</b>	National Natural forests and plantations All organization types SLIMFs included NTFPs included
<b>Submission date</b>	4 December 2018
<b>Approval date</b>	10 August 2020
<b>Approval body</b>	Policy and Standards Committee
<b>Publication date</b>	13 July 2021
<b>Effective date</b>	22 March 2021
<b>Transition period</b>	12 months from the effective date
<b>Validity period</b>	Five years from effective date or until revised, replaced or withdrawn
<b>Country contact</b>	Nikolay Shmatkov, Director FSC Russia <a href="mailto:n.shmatkov@fsc.org">n.shmatkov@fsc.org</a>
<b>FSC Performance and Standards Unit contact</b>	FSC International Center - Performance and Standards Unit - Adenauerallee 134 53113 Bonn, Germany  +49-(0)228-36766-0  +49-(0)228-36766-65  <a href="mailto:psu@fsc.org">psu@fsc.org</a>
<p>© 2020 Forest Stewardship Council, A.C. All rights reserved. FSC®F000100</p> <p>No part of this work covered by the publisher's copyright may be reproduced or copied in any form or by any means (graphic, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, recording taping, or information retrieval systems) without the written permission of the publisher.</p> <p>The Forest Stewardship Council® (FSC) is an independent, not for profit, non-government organization established to support environmentally appropriate, socially beneficial, and economically viable management of the world's forests.</p> <p>FSC's vision is that the true value of forests is recognized and fully incorporated into society worldwide. FSC is the leading catalyst and defining force for improved forest management and market transformation, shifting the global forest trend toward sustainable use, conservation, restoration, and respect for all.</p>	



## Table of Content

<b>1. Preface</b> .....	<b>5</b>
1.1. Descriptive statement of the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC).....	5
1.2. Descriptive statement of the National Office / Standard Development Group.....	5
<b>2. Preamble</b> .....	<b>6</b>
2.1. Purpose of the standard.....	6
2.2. Scope of the standard.....	7
2.3. Process of the standard development:.....	7
<b>3. Version of the standard</b> .....	<b>8</b>
<b>4. Context</b> .....	<b>9</b>
4.1. Applicability of the standard's requirements.....	9
<b>5. References</b> .....	<b>9</b>
<b>6. Structure of the standard, the use of indicators and wording</b> .....	<b>10</b>
<b>7. Procedural character of some principles and criteria</b> .....	<b>11</b>
<b>8. Translation</b> .....	<b>12</b>
<b>9. Scale Intensity and Risk (SIR)</b> .....	<b>12</b>
<b>10. Basic differences when compared with the previous version</b> .....	<b>12</b>
<b>11. Acknowledgement</b> .....	<b>14</b>
<b>12. List of abbreviations</b> .....	<b>17</b>
<b>13. Principles, Criteria and National Indicators</b> .....	<b>18</b>
<b>14. Annexes to a Forest Stewardship Standard</b> .....	<b>64</b>
Annex A. Minimum list of applicable laws: Russian Internationally-ratified treaties, conventions and agreements and Federation regulations.....	64
Annex B1. Applicable Articles of the United Nations Declaration of the Rights of Indigenous Peoples and ILO Convention 169.....	78
Annex B2 (new). Indigenous Peoples.....	82
Annex B3 (new). Customary Rights (Reference Materials).....	83
Annex B4 (new). FPIC.....	84
Annex C (new). Types of habitat features* being identified at harvest areas during timber harvesting operations and measures for their protection*.....	89
Annex D1. High Conservation Values.....	93
Annex D2. Methodological Approaches and Recommendations for Zoning Intact Forest Landscapes and Tracts in the Southern Russian Far East.....	121
Annex D3. Methodological Approaches and Recommendations for Zoning Intact Forest Landscapes in the Siberian Federal District.....	123
Annex E. Application of the concept of scale, intensity and risk (SIR) in <i>Criteria</i> * 6.2 and 6.3 .....	126
<b>15. Glossary of terms</b> .....	<b>130</b>



## 1. Preface

### 1.1. Descriptive statement of the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC)

The Forest Stewardship Council A.C. (FSC) was established in 1993, as a follow-up to the United Nations Conference on Environment and Development (the Earth Summit at Rio de Janeiro, 1992) with the mission to promote environmentally appropriate, socially beneficial, and economically viable management of the world's forests.

Environmentally appropriate forest management ensures that the production of timber, non-timber products and ecosystem services maintains the forest's biodiversity, productivity, and ecological processes. Socially beneficial forest management helps both local people and society at large to enjoy long term benefits and also provides strong incentives to local people to sustain the forest resources and adhere to long-term management plans. Economically viable forest management means that forest operations are structured and managed so as to be sufficiently profitable, without generating financial profit at the expense of the forest resource, the ecosystem, or affected communities. The tension between the need to generate adequate financial returns and the principles of responsible forest operations can be reduced through efforts to market the full range of forest products and services for their best value (FSC A.C. By-Laws, ratified, September 1994; last revision in June 2011).

FSC is an international organization that provides a system for voluntary accreditation and independent third-party certification. This system allows certificate holders to market their products and services as the result of environmentally appropriate, socially beneficial and economically viable forest management. FSC also sets standards for the development and approval of FSC Stewardship Standards which are based on the FSC Principles and Criteria. In addition, FSC sets standards for the accreditation of Conformity Assessment Bodies (also known as Certification Bodies) that certify compliance with FSC's standards. Based on these standards, FSC provides a system for certification for organizations seeking to market their products as FSC certified.

### 1.2. Descriptive statement of the National Office / Standard Development Group

The Russian Standard Development Group (SDG) is an independent chamber balanced group composed of members of the environmental, economic and social chambers of FSC Russia (Association The National working Group for Voluntary Forest Certification, or Association NWG). The SDG's objective is to develop and maintain the FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard according to FSC International's standards and procedures. The SDG was chaired and coordinated by Ms. Tatiana Yanitskaya (FSC Russia Deputy Director, Head of the Standards and Quality Department [t.yanitskaya@ru.fsc.org](mailto:t.yanitskaya@ru.fsc.org)) until May 2019, further Mr. Nikolay Shmatkov (director of FSC Russia [n.shmatkov@fsc.org](mailto:n.shmatkov@fsc.org)).



## 2. Preamble

### 2.1. Purpose of the standard

This standard sets out the required elements against which FSC accredited Certification Bodies shall evaluate forest management practices within the scope (see 2.2. below) of the standard.

The FSC Principles and Criteria (P&C) for Forest Stewardship provides an internationally recognized standard for responsible forest management. However, any international standard for forest management needs to be adapted at the regional or national level in order to reflect the diverse legal, social and geographical conditions of forests in different parts of the world. The FSC P&C therefore requires the addition of indicators that are adapted to regional or national conditions in order to be implemented at the management unit (MU) level.

With the approval of *FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0 EN* the FSC *International Generic Indicators* (IGI) by the FSC Board of Directors in March 2015, the adaptation of the P&C to regional or national conditions is done using the IGI standard as the starting point (from 1 July 2018, the second version of this document - *FSC-STD-60-004 V2-0 EN* is effective). This has the advantage to:

- Ensure the consistent implementation of the P&C across the globe;
- Improve and strengthen the credibility of the FSC System;
- Improve the consistency and quality of National Forest Stewardship Standards;
- Support a faster and more efficient approval process of National Forest Stewardship Standards.

The FSC Principles and Criteria together with a set of national indicators approved by FSC Policy and Standards Committee (PSC) constitute an FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard (NFSS).

The development of NFSS follows the requirements set out in the following FSC normative documents:

- *FSC-PRO-60-006 V2-0 EN Development and Transfer of National Forest Stewardship Standards to the FSC Principles and Criteria Version 5-2;*
- *FSC-STD-60-002 (V1-0) EN Structure and Content of National Forest Stewardship Standards AND*
- *FSC-STD-60-006 (V1-2) EN Process requirements for the development and maintenance of National Forest Stewardship Standards.*

The above documents have been developed by the FSC Performance and Standards Unit (PSU) to improve consistency and transparency in certification decisions between different Certification Bodies in different parts of the world, and thereby to enhance the credibility of the FSC certification scheme as a whole.



Russian National FSC Standard (hereinafter – Standard) is based on *FSC-STD-01-001 V 5-2 FSC Principles and Criteria*, as well as *FSC-STD-60-004 V 1-0 FSC International Generic Indicators (IGI)*.

FSC Principles and Criteria present basic elements and essential rules of environmentally appropriate, socially beneficial, and economically viable forest management. FSC Principles and Criteria are globally applicable and universal for all regions and types of forest ecosystems, as well as cultural, political and legal systems. They shall apply to the entire management unit within the scope of the certificate.

The wording of principles and criteria remains unchanged in the standard. The numbering of principles and criteria corresponds to *FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2 EN*. Each of the ten principles is specified by several criteria which enable to judge whether a principle is complied with in practice. Each criterion includes a number of indicators which are used to verify compliance of the management unit with the requirements of this criterion. There is no hierarchy between the principles or between criteria; they share equal status and authority. According to the transfer procedure (*FSC-PRO-60-006 V2-0 EN Development and Transfer of NFSS to FSC P&C V5-1*), some of the IGI indicators remain unchanged in the standard; some are adapted for the Russian Federation; others are excluded, and some new indicators are also incorporated.

## **2.2. Scope of the standard**

This standard is applicable to all forest operations seeking FSC certification within Russian Federation. The standard covers all types of forests, including natural forests and plantations and other non-forest vegetation types and lands within the managed area or areas. The standard applies to management units of any size. The scope of the standard covers harvesting of timber and non-timber forest products.

## **2.3. Process of the standard development:**

The decision to develop the standard was taken by the Coordination Council of the Russian NWG Association in December 2014. The development was implemented as part of the activities of the NWG Association Technical Committee. To design draft versions of the standard, alongside with the members of the Technical Committee, external experts whose candidatures were agreed by the Coordination Council were involved.

At different stages, in this or that capacity, the following persons participated directly (as members or consultants of the NWG Association Technical Committee, or external experts):

1. Aleynikov A.A. (member of the NWG Association, environmental chamber)
2. Arbachakov A. N. (member of the NWG Association, social chamber)
3. Burova N.V. (member of the NWG Association, environmental chamber)
4. Vikulov E.E. (member of the NWG Association, economic chamber)



5. Dobrinin D.V. (member of the NWG Association, social chamber)
6. Druzhinin A.S. (member of the NWG Association, economic chamber)
7. Efimova N.M. (member of the NWG Association, social chamber)
8. Karpachevskiy M.L. (member of the NWG Association, environmental chamber)
9. Kobiakov K.N. (member of the NWG Association, environmental chamber)
10. Kopeykin M.A. (member of the NWG Association, economic chamber)
11. Koroleva (Severenchuk) M.P. (member of the NWG Association, social chamber)
12. Kuliasova A. A. (member of the NWG Association, social chamber)
13. Kutepov D. G. (member of the NWG Association, economic chamber)
14. Loginov A.V. (member of the NWG Association, social chamber)
15. Moreva V.V. (member of the NWG Association, social chamber)
16. Nemchinova A.V. (member of the NWG Association, environmental chamber)
17. Nesterova O.A. (member of the NWG Association, economic chamber)
18. Pautov S.Y. (member of the NWG Association, economic chamber)
19. Popov D.A. (member of the NWG Association, economic chamber)
20. Popova E.A. (member of the NWG Association, environmental chamber)
21. Piankova E.G. (member of the NWG Association, economic chamber)
22. Rai E.A. (external expert)
23. Rogozina O.V. (member of the NWG Association, economic chamber)
24. Slastnikov S.I. (external expert)
25. Strakhova N.V. (member of the NWG Association, social chamber)
26. Shorokhov A. A. (member of the NWG Association, economic chamber)
27. Shchegolev A. A. (member of the NWG Association, environmental chamber)
28. Studentsov A. V. (member of the NWG Association, economic chamber)
29. Zagriadskov A.N. (member of the NWG Association, economic chamber)

The draft of the Standard passed public consultations twice:

- 1) First public consultations (10.03 – 15.05.2016)
- 2) Second public consultations (07.04 – 06.06.2017)

All comments received through consultations were closely viewed by experts and the Technical Committee and taken into account in the further work. The standard was approved by the NWG Association Technical Committee on 17.10.2018 and submitted for approval to FSC International on 4 December 2018.

### **3. Version of the standard**

Russian National Forest Stewardship Standard (based on V5-2 of FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship) V02-0 (as of 10 October 2018) and V02.1 (as of 3 May 2021).



## 4. Context

### 4.1. Applicability of the standard's requirements

All requirements of the standard (in particular, requirements for conservation of biodiversity and high conservation values) shall be met irrespective of the applied forest management model, including the intensive forest management model, providing it is implemented in accordance with appropriate regulations.

The standard covers all parts of the management system of the organization within the management unit related to the implementation of the declared management objectives, including those undertaken by own workers, as well as contractors and subcontractors. The requirements of the standard shall be complied with by every management unit applying for certification<sup>1</sup>. However, some of the standard's requirements apply beyond the boundary of the managed areas if this is related to the implementation of the management objectives (for example, infrastructure facilities). Moreover, indigenous peoples and local communities who could be affected by management activities, normally always reside outside the boundaries of the managed areas, as the populated areas in the Russian Federation, as a rule, are not found in the forest concession areas. Such peoples and communities can inhabit remote areas which are not adjacent to the managed areas, and the standard's requirements can apply to them as well.

## 5. References

The following referenced documents are relevant for the application of this standard. For references without a version number, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

<i>FSC-POL-01-004</i>	<i>Policy for the Association of Organizations with FSC</i>
<i>FSC-POL-20-003</i>	<i>The Excision of Areas from the Scope of Certification</i>
<i>FSC-POL-30-001</i>	<i>FSC Pesticides Policy</i>
<i>FSC-POL-30-401</i>	<i>FSC Certification and the ILO Conventions</i>
<i>FSC-POL-30-602</i>	<i>FSC Interpretation on GMOs: Genetically Modified Organisms</i>
<i>FSC-STD-01-001</i>	<i>FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship</i>
<i>FSC-STD-01-002</i>	<i>FSC Glossary of Terms</i>
<i>FSC-STD-01-003</i>	<i>SLIMF Eligibility Criteria</i>
<i>FSC-STD-20-007</i>	<i>Forest Management Evaluations</i>
<i>FSC-STD-30-005</i>	<i>FSC Standard for Group Entities in Forest Management Groups</i>
<i>FSC-STD-40-004a</i>	<i>FSC Product Classification</i>
<i>FSC-STD-60-002</i>	<i>Structure and Content of National Forest Stewardship Standards</i>

<sup>1</sup> See also the directive to indicator 2.1.2



<i>FSC-STD-60-004</i>	<i>FSC International Generic Indicators (IGI)</i>
<i>FSC-STD-60-006</i>	<i>Development of National Forest Stewardship Standards</i>
<i>FSC-PRO-01-001</i>	<i>The Development and Revision of FSC Normative Documents</i>
<i>FSC-PRO-01-005</i>	<i>Processing Appeals</i>
<i>FSC-PRO-01-008</i>	<i>Processing Complaints in the FSC Certification Scheme</i>
<i>FSC-PRO-01-009</i>	<i>Processing Policy for Association Complaints in the FSC Certification Scheme</i>
<i>FSC-PRO-30-006</i>	<i>Ecosystem Services Procedure: Impact Demonstration and Market Tools</i>
<i>FSC-DIR-20-007</i>	<i>FSC Directive on FSC Forest Management Evaluations</i>
<i>FSC-GUI-60-005</i>	<i>Promoting Gender Equality in National Forest Stewardship Standards</i>

#### **Additional documents**

<i>FSC-GUI-30-003</i>	<i>FSC Guidelines for the implementation of the right to Free, Prior and Informed Consent (FPIC)</i>
<i>FSC-GUI-60-002</i>	<i>Guideline for Standard Developers for addressing risk of unacceptable activities in regard to scale and intensity</i>
<i>FSC-GUI-60-009</i>	<i>Guidance for Standard Development Groups: Developing National High Conservation Value Frameworks</i>
<i>FSC-GUI-60-009a</i>	<i>Template for National High Conservation Value Frameworks</i>

HCV Resource Network - Common Guidance for the Identification of High Conservation Values (HCV)

HCV Resource Network - Common Guidance for HCV Management and Monitoring

ISO 31000:2009 Risk management – Principles and guidelines.

## **6. Structure of the standard, the use of indicators and wording**

The standard consists of the introduction, check-list, annexes and glossary of terms. The check-list consists of principles, criteria and related indicators.

The indicators are numbered starting from the number of the corresponding FSC criterion followed by the number of the indicator in their order. For example, the first indicator for criterion\* 2.3 shall be numbered 2.3.1, the second – 2.3.2 etc.

The following elements of this standard are normative: scope, effectiveness date, validity period, glossary of terms, principles, criteria and indicators, directives, tables and annexes, unless indicated otherwise.



The following elements of this standard are not normative and can be used for guidance only: notes. Notes for some principles and criteria allow for better understanding of their requirements (for example, the notes could clarify the national context).

Directives mentioned in the list of normative elements above, are specifications of the requirements in the indicators and shall be fulfilled by the organization. Any exemptions from indicators are written in the directives. There are many requirements in annexes as well, this means that it is impossible to meet the requirements of many indicators without following the requirements of annexes (e.g. requirements of indicators of Principle 9 are interpreted in Annex D1).

The compulsory nature of each part of the standard (except indicators itself) is reflected in its language, expressed according to the ISO “verbal forms for the expression of provisions”:

- **shall**: indicates instructions strictly to be followed;
- **may**: indicates a course of actions permissible within the limits of the Standard;
- **can**: is used for statements of possibility and capability, whether material, physical or causal;
- **shall not**: indicates a prohibition of actions;
- **should / should not**: indicates that among several possibilities one is recommended as particularly suitable, without mentioning or excluding others.

The glossary of the standard provides IGI terms and other technical and scientific terms that clarify and interpret the instructions of the Standard. In the text of the standard, the terms are formatted in italics and marked with an asterisk\*.

Some terms in the glossary are provided with notes. For a number of terms interpretations for the Russian Federation have been specifically developed, in the first place, where the definition of the term needed to be reconciled with the Russian law. However, these interpretations do not contradict international definitions of the terms.

## 7. Procedural character of some principles and criteria

Some principles, groups of criteria and individual criteria of a number of principles have a procedural character. This means that implementation of the first requirement in this principle (group of criteria, individual criterion) is a condition for implementation of the following ones. For example, with regard to Principle 3 this means that the organization shall first identify indigenous peoples who can be affected by the management activities (Criterion 3.1), and then recognize and uphold their rights, identify areas of special value to them, etc. Without identifying indigenous peoples it is impossible to comply with the rest of the requirements in Principle 3. Therefore, if Criterion 3.1 is not met, this automatically denotes that the other requirements are not met, which means non-compliance with entire Principle 3.



Procedural character is expressed in Principles 3, 4 and 9 in full scope, Criteria 6.1 – 6.3 of Principle 6, and Criteria 7.1 – 7.3 of Principle 7. However, compliance with some of the criteria can be ensured gradually.

## **8. Translation**

The standard was originally developed in Russian. However, the English translation of the standard passed the FSC approval. Therefore, in case of disputes, the version with the English wording of the standard shall be considered definitive.

## **9. Scale Intensity and Risk (SIR)**

The concept of scale and intensity was already present in FSC Principles and Criteria from the very beginning and was based on the assumption that the smaller the management unit and the lower the intensity of management activities, the lower is the risk of negative impacts. The term risk was included in Principles and Criteria V5-2 in order to make this concept more evident and bring principles and criteria in line with amendments in other certification schemes with regard to risk acceptance.

The implementation approach with regard to SIR concept reflected in the standard is based on risk assessment and measures mitigating negative impacts. No proposals were made regarding other measurable thresholds that would be applicable to Russian Federation or proposals regarding thresholds reflecting intensity. At the same time, the impact of management activities of the organization is largely determined by the context of management activities (see Annex E). To summarize, the approach of implementing the SIR concept, as it is reflected in the standard, is based on Precautionary Principle, assesses originally the risks of negative impact as high and requires taking measures to mitigate negative consequences.

## **10. Basic differences when compared with the previous version**

The number of principles compared with the previous version (FSC-STD 6-01 RUS) remains unchanged; however, for some of them the content has undergone significant changes and the number of criteria is bigger (70 versus 56 before):

**Principle 1.** Compliance with Laws (8 criteria)

**Principle 2.** Workers' Rights and Employment Conditions (6 criteria)

**Principle 3.** Indigenous Peoples' Rights (6 criteria)

**Principle 4.** Community Relations (8 criteria)

**Principle 5.** Benefits from the Forest (5 criteria)

**Principle 6.** Environmental Values and Impacts (10 criteria)

**Principle 7.** Management Planning (6 criteria)



**Principle 8.** Monitoring and Assessment (5 criteria)

**Principle 9.** High Conservation Values (4 criteria)

**Principle 10.** Implementation of Management Activities (12 criteria)

The set of annexes has changed: some of them are excluded, others are added. This was done either in accordance with the IGI instructions or in the course of the development of the standard.

The terminology has been altered substantially. First of all, new terms have appeared to reflect new or significantly updated concepts and requirements. Such terms include adaptive management, free, prior and informed consent, connectivity, best available information. There are also new terms reflecting rather a change of approach than emergence of fundamentally new requirements; however, this change has a considerable influence on compliance with many instructions of the standard. Such terms include management unit, environmental values, conservation areas network, engagement, applicable law. Some terms have been updated, for example, high conservation value; however, the essence of the requirements in Principle 9 due to the alteration of the term remains basically unchanged. When working with the standard, it is important to draw special attention to the terminology; otherwise, some instructions can be misinterpreted. In particular, the term management unit demands careful consideration, since to a certain degree, this term broadens the organization's area of responsibility.

Essentially new requirements of the standard<sup>2</sup> (compared to Version 6-01) include the following:

- implementation of adaptive management;
- the organization's commitment not to offer or receive bribes in any form and comply with anti-corruption legislation;
- the demand to determine workers' wages not lower than living wages;
- the requirement to receive free, prior and informed consent (FPIC) from indigenous peoples and/or local communities in case their rights are affected;
- the requirement to provide a compensation to local communities for the utilization of traditional knowledge and their intellectual property;
- the requirement to provide a fair compensation to workers for loss or damage to property, occupational diseases, or occupational injuries sustained while working for the organization.

The following requirements and/or approaches to the implementation have been considerably altered:

- compliance with all applicable laws;
- upholding of customary rights of indigenous peoples and local communities;
- assessment of environmental values and impacts on them;

<sup>2</sup> Some of these requirements are reflected in the Russian legislation.



- maintaining high conservation values;
- timely forest regeneration to pre-harvest (prior to harvest) condition or to more natural condition;
- meeting the requirements with regard to local communities and indigenous peoples (differences between them are amended).

Some requirements of FSC-STD 6-01 RUS Version are not included in this standard (for example, the instructions to conduct flora and fauna monitoring, to have a program of transition from clearcutting in a large area to selective cutting and clear cutting in a smaller area, to imitate natural dynamics of forest ecosystems).

## 11. Acknowledgement

Alongside with persons directly involved in the standard's development (see Process of the Standard's Development), the following persons played an important role in the preparation of the document:

### **Members of the NWG Association Coordination Council (from December 2014 till April 2019):**

Shmatkov N.M., Chair of the Council (WWF Russia)  
Gerasimova K.I. (OOO TSLK, AO Ilim Group)  
Gershenzon O.N. (RBC Signals)  
Grigoriev A.Y. (International Social Environmental Union)  
Zhuravlev D.S. (Forestry Workers Trade Union)  
Zabubenin E.V. (IKEA)  
Lebedev A.V. (BROC)  
Pautov Y.A. (Silver Taiga Foundation)  
Semiashkina V.T. (Silver Taiga Foundation)  
Smirnova E.V. (OOO Greens)  
Tsyachniuk M.S. (Center for Independent Sociological Research)

### **Members of the NWG Association Coordination Council (from April 2019 to date):**

Kozlova E.A. (Russian Green Building Council)  
Shegolev A. A. (WWF Russia)  
Pautov Y.A. (Silver Taiga Foundation)  
Piankova E.G. (AO Ilim Group)  
Rogozina O.V. (Stora Enso)  
Trubin Y.G. (Titan Group)  
Semiashkina V.T. (Silver Taiga Foundation)  
Efimova N.M. (consultant)  
Strahova N.V. (Timber Production)



**FSC Russia staff:**

Bubko E.V.  
Diukova T.I.  
Gerasimov V.S.  
Ptichnikov A.V.  
Tveritina E.S.  
Titkov A.S.

**Members of the Commission for Certification Issues in the Far East and Siberian Federal District, NWG Association:**

Alekseenko A.Y. (Far Eastern Forestry Research Institute)  
Arteev A.M. (OAO Dallesprom)  
Baburin A.A. (Institute for Water and Environmental Problems, Far Eastern Branch of the Russian Academy of Sciences)  
Bryukhanov A.V. (V.N. Sukachev Forest Institute, Siberia Branch of the Russian Academy of Sciences)  
Gvozdarev A.A. (OOO DOC Enisey)  
Gorodetskaya N.V. (AO Novoeniseysky Forestry)  
Diukarev E.N. (Biology and Soil Institute, Far Eastern Branch of the Russian Academy of Sciences)  
Efremov D.F. (IEUP)  
Komin A.E. (Primorskaya GSKhA)  
Lisunov O.A. (OAO Terneyles)  
Malanin P.B. (OAO Dallesprom)  
Mammatov V.O. (OAO Lesosibirsky LDK #1)  
Mllakovskiy Brian (Amur Branch of WWF Russia)  
Nepovinnykh A.G. (AO Kraslesinvest)  
Omelko A.V. (Biology and Soil Institute, Far Eastern Branch of the Russian Academy of Sciences)  
Purekhovskiy A.Zh. (Amur Branch of WWF Russia)  
Sipkin V.A. (Altai-Sayani Branch of WWF Russia)  
Stashkevich N.Y. (Altai-Sayani Branch of WWF Russia)  
Stupina A.D. (AO LDK Igirma)  
Trofimenko Y.G. (OAO Lesosibirsky LDK #1)  
Trofimova N.V. (Altai-Sayani Branch of WWF Russia)  
Ukhvatkina O.N. (Biology and Soil Institute, Far Eastern Branch of the Russian Academy of Sciences)  
Fedichkina E.A. (Amur Branch of WWF Russia)  
Khaliulov R.I. (OAO Terneyles)



Chan-Sa V.A. (AO Novoyeniseysky Forestry)  
Chuvasov E.V. (Amur Branch of WWF Russia)  
Shebeta D.I. (USt-Ilim Branch of Ilim Group)

**Participants of the field-testing in Tver Oblast:**

Medvedev A.G. (independent consultant)  
Galeev A.M. (OOO STOD)  
Dubrova S.Y. (OOO STOD)

**Participants of public and private consultations (in addition to the above-mentioned):**

Blinkova K.A. (OOO Leseco Nord)  
Verveiko I.V. (AO Ilim Group)  
Greenpeace Russia  
Debkov N.M. (independent consultant)  
Drovnina S.I. (Kenezersky National Park)  
Zagidullina A.T. (St. Petersburg Forestry Research Institute, St. Petersburg State University)  
Ivanov Y.A. (OOO Karelia Wood Company)  
Kamorina G.N. (ZAO Tikhvinsky KLPKh)  
Murashko O.A. (Center for Support of Indigenous Peoples)  
Svitelskaya A.V. (ZAO Shuyales)  
Sergeeva M.I. (Krasnodar Region NGO for All-Russian Society of Nature Conservation)  
Smirnova O.V. (Center of Forest Ecology and Productivity, RAS)  
Suliandziga R.V. (Center for Support of Indigenous Peoples)  
Troitskaya M.A. (OOO IKEA Industry Tikhvin)  
Khoroshev A.V. (Lomonosov Moscow State University)  
Cherenkova N.N. (Kenezersky National Park)  
Yaroshenko A.Y. (Greenpeace Russia)

FSC Russia would like to express deep gratitude to all the participants of the meetings held during the development of the Standard in 2014 – 2018.



## 12. List of abbreviations

WL – wetlands  
HCV – High Conservation Value  
IGI – International Generic Indicator  
MU – Management Unit  
PF – Protective Forests  
IPA – Important Plant Areas  
IBAR – Important Bird Areas of Russia  
HCVF – High Conservation Value Forest  
IWT – Intact Wetland Tracts  
SIR – Scale, Intensity and Risk  
IFT – Intact Forest Tracts  
IFL – Intact Forest Landscapes  
IUCN – International Union for Conservation of Nature  
BAI – Best Available Information  
NFH – National Forest Heritage  
SPFH – Special Protection Forest Habitats  
PNA – Protected Nature Area  
P&C – «FSC Principles and Criteria»  
PPE – personal protective equipment  
FPIC – Free, Prior and Informed Consent  
TTNRU – territories of traditional natural resource use

**13. Principles, criteria and national indicators**

<p><b>PRINCIPLE 1: COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS</b></p> <p><i>The Organization* shall* comply with all applicable laws*, regulations and nationally-ratified* international treaties, conventions and agreements.</i></p>
<p><b>Criterion 1.1.</b> <i>The Organization* shall* be a legally defined entity with clear, documented and unchallenged legal registration*, with written authorization from the legally competent* authority for specific activities. (new)</i></p>
<p>Indicator 1.1.1. <i>Legal registration* of The Organization* for any activities within the scope of the certificate is documented and unchallenged (see Annex A, sections 1.1 and 1.2).</i></p>
<p><b>Criterion 1.2.</b> <i>The Organization* shall* demonstrate that the legal* status of the Management Unit*, including tenure* and use rights*, and its boundaries, are clearly defined.</i></p>
<p>Indicator 1.2.1. <i>Legal rights of tenure*, use* and management of resources within the scope of the certificate are granted by legally competent* authorities according to processes prescribed in applicable laws* (see Annex A, sections 1.1 and 1.2) and documented by The Organization*.</i></p>
<p>Indicator 1.2.2. <i>The boundaries of managed areas* within the scope of the certificate are documented and clearly shown on cartographic material*.</i></p>
<p><b>Criterion 1.3.</b> <i>The Organization* shall* have legal* rights to operate in the Management Unit*, which fit the legal* status of The Organization* and of the Management Unit*, and shall* comply with the associated legal* obligations in applicable national and local laws* and regulations and administrative requirements. The legal* rights shall* provide for harvest of products and/or supply of ecosystem services* from within the Management Unit*. The Organization* shall* pay the legally prescribed charges associated with such rights and obligations.</i></p>
<p>Indicator 1.3.1. <i>Management activities of The Organization* within the Management Unit* comply with the applicable laws* (see Annex A, sections 1.4 and 3, as well as section 7 in a case of supplying ecosystem services*).</i></p>
<p>Indicator 1.3.2. <i>Legally prescribed charges and fees connected with the legal* rights to operate within the Management Unit* and associated obligations are paid within the time limits prescribed by the applicable laws* (see Annex A, section 2).</i></p>
<p>Indicator 1.3.3. <i>Activities stipulated by the management plan* are designed in compliance with the applicable laws* (see Annex A, section 1.3).</i></p>
<p><b>Criterion 1.4.</b> <i>The Organization* shall* develop and implement measures, and/or shall* engage with regulatory agencies, to systematically protect the Management Unit* from unauthorized or illegal resource use, settlement and other illegal activities.</i></p>



**Note:** FSC recognizes that it is not always possible for *The Organization\** to prevent fully any illegal activities, for example, when it does not have appropriate *legal\** rights. In Russia, state bodies in charge are legally responsible for control of illegal activities. As it is not legally possible in Russia for *The Organization\** to enforce measures to directly prevent any illegal activities, it *may\** be done through cooperation with regulatory bodies in charge with regard to identification, reporting and control of illegal activities which *can\** take place within the *Management Unit\**.

**Note:** Requirements of the *Criterion\** and its *Indicators\** are aimed at protection of *management areas\** from illegal activities not related to *The Organization\**'s activity.

Indicator 1.4.1 Measures are developed and implemented to prevent illegal activities and provide protection of *management areas\** from illegal activities.

Illegal activities include illegal harvesting, hunting and fishing (poaching), land seizure, development or settlement, disposal of *waste\** or other prohibited activities.

Indicator 1.4.2 The procedure for informing corresponding authorized regulatory bodies about illegal activities of third parties detected within *managed areas\** is developed and implemented.

**Criterion 1.5.** *The Organization\** shall comply with the *applicable national laws\**, *local laws\**, *ratified\** international conventions and *obligatory codes of practice\**, relating to the transportation and trade of forest products within and from the *Management Unit\**, and/or up to the point of first sale.

Indicator 1.5.1 Compliance with *applicable laws\**, *ratified\** international conventions and *obligatory codes of practice\** relating to the transportation and trade of wood and *non-timber forest products\** up to the point of first sale is demonstrated (see Annex A, sections 5.1, 5.2, 5.4).

Indicator 1.5.2. When harvesting and trading in any CITES species, compliance with CITES provisions is demonstrated, including through possession of specific CITES permit and/or certificate (see Annex A, sections 5.5).

**Directive:** *the indicator\** is applicable, if *The Organization\** exports or imports any CITES species (<http://checklist.cites.org/#/en>).

Indicator 1.5.3. *Workers\** implementing transportation and trade of forest products as part of their duty are informed about the corresponding requirements of the *applicable laws\**.

**Criterion 1.6.** *The Organization\** shall identify, prevent and resolve *disputes\** over issues of *statutory\** or *customary law\**, which *can\** be settled out of court in a *timely manner\**, through *engagement* with *affected stakeholders\**.

Indicator 1.6.1 A *publicly available\** *dispute\** consideration and resolution process developed through *engagement\** with *affected stakeholders\** is in place.

Indicator 1.6.2. *Disputes\** related to *tenure\** and *use rights\** within *managed areas\** under *applicable laws\** or *customary law\** that *can\** be settled out of court are responded to in a *timely manner\**, and are either resolved or are in the resolution process.



<p>Indicator 1.6.3. Up to date records of <i>disputes*</i> according to <i>indicator*</i> 1.6.2 are held including:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Registration date of the <i>dispute*</i>;</li> <li>2) Time period for the <i>dispute*</i> consideration and resolution;</li> <li>3) Steps taken to resolve the <i>dispute*</i>;</li> <li>4) Outcomes of the <i>dispute*</i> resolution process;</li> <li>5) <i>Disputes of substantial duration*</i>, the reasons the <i>dispute*</i> was not resolved, and additional measures for its resolution.</li> </ol>
<p>Indicator 1.6.4. <i>The Organization*</i> ceases operations in those parts of <i>managed area</i> or <i>areas*</i> where exist:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) <i>Disputes of substantial magnitude*</i>; or</li> <li>2) <i>Disputes of substantial duration*</i>; or</li> <li>3) <i>Disputes*</i> involving a <i>significant*</i> number of <i>affected stakeholders*</i>.</li> </ol> <p><b>Directive:</b> <i>Indicator*</i> is applied in all cases when such <i>disputes*</i> exist with relation to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– <i>legal*</i> or <i>customary rights*</i> of <i>tenure*</i> and/or use of territories and resources, including <i>legal*</i> or <i>customary rights*</i> of <i>Indigenous Peoples*</i> and <i>local communities*</i> according to <i>Criteria*</i> 3.1 and 4.6;</li> <li>– the impact of management activities on <i>Indigenous Peoples’</i> communities and/or <i>local communities*</i> according to <i>Criteria*</i> 3.1 and 4.6.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Criterion 1.7.</b> <i>The Organization* shall*</i> publicize a commitment not to offer or receive bribes in money or any other form of corruption, and <i>shall*</i> comply with anti-corruption legislation where this exists. In the absence of anti-corruption legislation, <i>The Organization* shall*</i> implement other anti-corruption measures proportionate to the <i>scale*</i> and <i>intensity*</i> of management activities and the <i>risk*</i> of corruption.</p>
<p>Indicator 1.7.1 An anti-corruption policy is developed and implemented that includes a commitment not to offer or receive bribes of any description and meets or exceeds <i>applicable laws*</i>.</p>
<p>Indicator 1.7.2. The policy that contains <i>The Organization’s*</i> anti-corruption commitments is <i>publicly available*</i> at no cost.</p>
<p>Indicator 1.7.3. Bribery, coercion and other acts of corruption do not occur.</p>
<p>Indicator 1.7.4. If facts of bribery, coercion and other acts of corruption are identified corrective measures are implemented.</p>
<p><b>Criterion 1.8.</b> <i>The Organization* shall*</i> demonstrate a <i>long-term*</i> commitment to adhere to the FSC <i>Principles*</i> and <i>Criteria*</i> in the <i>Management Unit*</i>, and to related FSC Policies and Standards. A statement of this commitment <i>shall*</i> be contained in a <i>publicly available*</i> document made freely available.</p>
<p>Indicator 1.8.1 A written policy, endorsed by an individual with authority to implement <i>The Organization’s*</i> policy, includes a <i>long-term*</i> commitment to <i>forest*</i> management practices consistent with FSC <i>Principles*</i> and <i>Criteria*</i> and related FSC Policies and Standards.</p>
<p>Indicator 1.8.2. The policy according to <i>Indicator*</i> 1.8.1 is <i>publicly available*</i> at no cost.</p>

**PRINCIPLE 2: WORKERS\* RIGHTS AND EMPLOYMENT CONDITIONS**

*The Organization\* shall\* maintain or enhance the social and economic wellbeing of workers\*.*

**Criterion 2.1** *The Organization\* shall\* uphold\* the principles and rights at work as defined in the ILO Declaration on Fundamental Principles and Rights at Work (1998) based on the eight ILO Core Labour Conventions.*

Indicator 2.1.1 Employment practices and conditions for *workers\** demonstrate conformity with or exceed requirements of the ILO Declaration on Fundamental Principles and Rights at Work (1998) based on the eight ILO Core Labour Conventions.

**Note:** The Russian Federation ratified ILO Core Labour Conventions listed in the ILO Declaration on Fundamental Principles and Rights at Work (1998), such as:

- 29 Forced Labour Convention, 1930;
- 87 Freedom of Association and Protection of the Right to Organize Conventions, 1948;
- 98 Right to Organize and Collective Bargaining Convention, 1949;
- 105 Abolition of Forced Labour Convention, 1957;
- 111 Discrimination (Occupation and Employment) Convention, 1958;
- 100 Equal Remuneration Convention, 1951;
- 138 Minimum Age Convention, 1973;
- 182 Worst Forms of Child Labour Convention, 1999.

The Russian legislation is harmonized with the requirements of the above ILO conventions and demonstrates conformity with or *uphold\** their requirements. To meet the requirements of the *Indicator\**, it is sufficient to comply with the requirements of the national labor legislation.

Indicator 2.1.2. Provisions of federal industrial tariff agreements on forest management and forest industries with regard to the rights of *workers\** to establish or join labor organizations of their own choosing, or to bargain with the employer on behalf of the labor organization or its members are in place.

**Note:** in this case the “labor organization” means any organization of *workers\** or entrepreneurs aimed at supporting and protecting the interests of *workers\** or entrepreneurs.

**Note:** Core FSC requirements with regard to observation of the *workers\** right to organize and collectively bargain with their employers are described in FSC-POL-30-401 FSC Certification and the ILO Conventions.

**Directive:** forest areas leased for the purpose of timber harvesting by institutions under the Main Directorate of the Federal Penitentiary Service (GUFSIN entities) of the Ministry of Justice of the Russian Federation (correctional labor colonies) are not subject to certification. According to the Penal Code (Chapter 14, clause 6), “Sentenced persons may not stop to work to settle labor disputes”. Prisoners *can\** not fully bargain for their labor conditions with the employer, as prescribed by 87 and 98 ILO Conventions.

Indicator 2.1.3. Agreements resulting from collective bargaining between the management and *workers\** (including *workers\*\** organizations) are implemented.

Indicator 2.1.4. All *workers\**, including the new ones, are familiarized with the content, meaning and applicability of the eight ILO Core Labour Conventions, so the *workers\**:

- know about the convention (knowledge of the exact title, number and date is not mandatory);
- know where to find the text of the conventions, if necessary;
- are able to tell the main idea of the conventions (according to the table below).

Convention	Main idea
87 Freedom of Association and Protection of the Right to Organize Conventions, 1948	Workers have the right to form organizations and join them without prior permission. Management of The Organization or state bodies shall not restrict the right or prevent its exercising. Measures on protection of the right for the freedom of association, protection of labor unions from discrimination, and on non-interference of workers organizations and entrepreneurs organizations in the internal affairs of each other are envisaged
98 Right to Organize and Collective Bargaining Convention, 1949	
29 Forced Labour Convention, 1930	Forced or compulsory labor is unacceptable in any form. Forced or compulsory labor is any work or job enforced through threat of punishment and which is not taken by the person voluntarily
105 Abolition of Forced Labour Convention, 1957	
100 Equal Remuneration Convention, 1951	Equal labor shall be paid equally irrespective of the gender
111 Discrimination (Occupation and Employment) Convention, 1958	Everyone has equal opportunities to exercise his or her labor rights. No one may restrict labor rights or freedoms or get preferential treatment in their realization based on gender, race, skin color, nationality, language, origin, wealth, background, official status, age, place of residence, religious beliefs, political convictions, party affiliation or lack thereof, as well as other circumstances unrelated to the professional qualities of an employee. Persons who consider that they have been subjected to discrimination in the area of employment are entitled to apply to the courts for the restoration of their violated rights, reparation of material damages and compensation for moral damages
138 Minimum Age Convention, 1973	Adopted to eliminate children labor. The minimal age for employment shall not be lower than the age of completion of compulsory education
182 Worst Forms of Child Labour Convention, 1999	Children (boys and girls under 18) cannot perform work that can be hazardous or harmful to his or her health, safety or morals



**Criterion 2.2.** *The Organization\* shall\* promote gender equality\* in employment practices, training opportunities, awarding of contracts, processes of engagement\* and management activities.*

**Note:** labor legislation of the Russian Federation prohibits any forms of discrimination, including discrimination based on gender.

According to Article 3 of the Labor Code of the Russian Federation, “Nobody may be subject to restrictions in labor rights and liberties or gain any advantages regardless of sex, race, color of skin, nationality, language, origin, property, family, social status and occupational position, age, place of residence, attitude to religion, political views, affiliation or failure to affiliate with public associations, as well as other circumstances not pertaining to the business properties of the employee”.

To meet the *indicators\** of the *Criterion\**, it is sufficient to comply with the respective requirements of the Russian labor legislation.

Indicator 2.2.1 Cases of gender discrimination of *workers\** in employment practices, training opportunities, awarding of contracts, processes of *engagement\** and *worker\** management activities do not occur.

Indicator 2.2.2. *The Organization\** does not violate Russian labour legislation as listed in Annex A (Section 3.5).

Indicator 2.2.3. Confidential and effective mechanisms exist for reporting and eliminating cases of sexual harassment and discrimination based on gender, marital status, parenthood or sexual orientation.

Indicator 2.2.4. Gender discrimination does not occur when planning and implementing training and health and safety programs.

Indicator 2.2.5. Gender discrimination does not occur when determining the wage for the same work.

Indicator 2.2.6. Wages (and other payments) are paid directly to workers in an order specified in their work contracts to ensure they safely receive and retain their wages in compliance with national legislation.

Indicator 2.2.7. The duration of maternity (paternity) leave is in compliance with *applicable laws\** and is no less than a six-week period after childbirth

Indicator 2.2.8. Maternity (paternity) leave is used fully or partly either by mother or father of a child depending on who in practice takes care about the child.

Indicator 2.2.9. Men and women have equal rights regarding their participation in meetings, management committees and decision-making forums.

**Criterion 2.3.** *The Organization\* shall\* implement health and safety practices to protect workers\* from occupational safety and health hazards. These practices shall\*, proportionate to scale, intensity and risk\* of management activities, meet or exceed the recommendations of the ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work.*

Indicator 2.3.1. Health and safety practices are developed and implemented that meet or exceed the ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work that embrace all types of activities at all sites where they are performed.



Indicator 2.3.2. <i>Workers*</i> know health and safety rules, are able to use their personal protective equipment and know internal health and safety regulations as part of their official duties.
Indicator 2.3.3. <i>Workers*</i> have personal protective equipment in accordance with the requirements of Table 2 of the ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work (see Annex A) and the effective labor legislation appropriate to their assigned tasks.
Indicator 2.3.4. <i>Workers*</i> observe health and safety requirements, in particular by using the appropriate safety or personal protective equipment according to <i>Indicator*</i> 2.3.3.
Indicator 2.3.5. <i>Workers*</i> involved in forestry work are provided with accommodation, shelters, clear potable water and meals meeting the requirements under articles 224-231 of the ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work (2001).
Indicator 2.3.6. Records are kept on <i>occupational accidents*</i> .
Indicator 2.3.7. Causes of occupational <i>accidents*</i> are investigated.
Indicator 2.3.8. Corrective actions are implemented in order to prevent occupational <i>accidents*</i> in the future.
<b>Criterion 2.4.</b> <i>The Organization*</i> shall* pay wages that meet or exceed minimum <i>forest*</i> industry standards or other recognized <i>forest*</i> industry wage agreements or <i>living wages*</i> , where these are higher than the <i>legal*</i> minimum wages. When none of these exist, <i>The Organization*</i> shall* through <i>engagement*</i> with <i>workers*</i> develop mechanisms for determining <i>living wages*</i> .
Indicator 2.4.1. Wages paid to the <i>worker*</i> by <i>The Organization*</i> meet or exceed <i>minimum living wages*</i> established by state authorities.
Indicator 2.4.2. Wages and contractors services are paid according to the employment contracts and contractors contracts.
<b>Criterion 2.5</b> <i>The Organization*</i> shall* demonstrate that <i>workers*</i> have job-specific training and supervision to safely and effectively implement the <i>Management Plan*</i> and all management activities.
Indicator 2.5.1. <i>Workers*</i> have job-specific training consistent with their official duties and supervision to safely and effectively implement the <i>Management Plan*</i> and all management activities.
Indicator 2.5.2. Up to date training records are kept for all relevant <i>workers*</i> according to 2.5.1.
Indicator 2.5.3. <i>Workers*</i> carrying out particularly dangerous jobs or jobs entailing the service of hazardous facilities within the scope of their responsibility are familiarized with <i>The Organization's*</i> relevant internal guidelines and observe them.
<b>Criterion 2.6</b> <i>The Organization*</i> through <i>engagement*</i> with <i>workers*</i> shall* have mechanisms for resolving grievances and for providing <i>fair compensation*</i> to <i>workers*</i> for loss or damage to property, <i>occupational diseases*</i> , or <i>occupational injuries*</i> sustained while working for <i>The Organization*</i> .
Indicator 2.6.1. Through <i>engagement*</i> with <i>workers*</i> a <i>dispute*</i> resolution procedure is developed and implemented. <i>Workers*</i> are familiarized with the procedure's provisions.



Indicator 2.6.2. Up-to-date records of *workers\** grievances related to *workers\** loss or damage of property, *occupational diseases\** or *occupational injuries\** are maintained including:

- Names, surnames and positions of the persons who raised a grievance;
- Grievance date;
- Grievance description;
- Steps taken to resolve grievances;
- *Dispute\** settlement status based on the steps undertaken;
- Date of reporting to the *workers\** about the results of the *dispute\**;
- Unresolved disputes, the reasons they are not resolved, and how they will be resolved.

Indicator 2.6.3. *Workers\** grievances, if any, are identified and resolved or are in the process of resolution.

Indicator 2.6.4. Compensation is provided to *workers\** for work-related loss or damage of property and *occupational disease\** or *occupational injuries\**.

**Directive:** the procedure for damage compensation, including its conditions, types and the amount of coverage, is regulated by the law on insurance against accidents and occupational diseases, see Annex A. The procedure of compensation for property loss or damage is to be defined through talks or negotiations. Judicial procedures are used only if the negotiations bring no result.

**PRINCIPLE 3: INDIGENOUS PEOPLES' RIGHTS**

*The Organization\* shall\* identify and uphold\* Indigenous Peoples\* legal\* and customary rights\* of ownership, use and management of land, territories\* and resources affected by management activities.*

**Criterion 3.1.** *The Organization\* shall\* identify the Indigenous Peoples\* that exist within the Management Unit\* or those that are affected by management activities. The Organization\* shall\* then, through engagement\* with these Indigenous Peoples, identify their rights of tenure\*, their rights of access to and use of forest\* resources and ecosystem services\*, their customary rights\* and legal\* rights and obligations, that apply within the Management Unit\*. The Organization\* shall\* also identify areas where these rights are contested.*

Indicator 3.1.1. *Indigenous Peoples\* Communities that can\* be affected by The Organization's\* management activity are identified and a list of them is compiled.*

**Directive:** Hereinafter *the engagement\* of The Organization\* with Indigenous Peoples\** means that *The Organization\* engages\* not with Indigenous Peoples\* as a whole, but with a particular community (community/"obshchina", settlement, group, etc.) of Indigenous Peoples\* which is affected or can\* be affected by The Organization's\* management activity.*

**Directive:** For the purpose of this standard, *Indigenous Peoples\** communities are understood as groups of people that meet all the following criteria:

1. Self-identification at the individual level and acceptance by the community as their member;
2. Historical continuity with communities of this nation that lived in the area before its settlement by other nations and/or during several centuries;
3. Dependence on natural resources of the area as a source of livelihood;
4. A lifestyle that resolves to maintain and reproduce traditional for these peoples environments and distinct way of life based on traditional uses of natural resources; and
5. Form non-dominant groups of society.

**Directive:** if new data become available, the list of *Indigenous Peoples\** communities is to be respectively updated.

**Directive:** when identifying *Indigenous Peoples\** communities, the following communities are considered, if they:

1. inhabit within or nearby the *Management Unit\**, as well as
2. inhabit at the distance from the *Management Unit\**, but possess *legal\* or customary rights\* of tenure\** on land, *forest\* resources and ecosystem services\** within the *Management Unit\**, and/or
3. are or *can\** be affected by the management activity within the *Management Unit\**.

**Directive:** see the list of *Best Available Information\** in Annex B2.

Indicator 3.1.2. Through *engagement\** with the *Indigenous Peoples\** communities identified according to *Indicator\** 3.1.1, the following issues are documented and/or shown on *cartographic material\**:

- 1) Their *legal\** and *customary rights\** of *tenure\**,
- 2) Their *legal\** and *customary rights\** of *tenure\** on the *forest\** resources and *ecosystem services\**;
- 3) Their *legal\** and *customary rights\** and obligations that apply;
- 4) The evidence supporting these rights and obligations;
- 5) Areas where rights are contested;
- 6) The means by which the *legal\** and *customary rights\** and contested rights, are addressed by *The Organization\**;
- 7) The documentary evidence of intentions and/or plans of communities of *Indigenous Peoples\** that *can\** be affected by *The Organization's\** management activity.

**Note:** Various written sources, as well as the results of surveys, dialogues and interviews *may\** be used as an evidence.

**Criterion 3.2.** *The Organization\** shall recognize and *uphold\** the *legal\** and *customary rights\** of *Indigenous Peoples\** to maintain control over management activities within or related to the *Management Unit\** to the extent necessary to protect their rights, resources and *lands and territories\**. Delegation by *Indigenous Peoples\** of control over management activities to third parties requires *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\**.

**Directive:** The *Criterion\** requires to “*uphold\** the ... *rights\** of *Indigenous Peoples\** to maintain control over management activities...”. The *Criterion\** also requires *FPIC\** for “Delegation ... of control over management activities to third parties”. However, in the *Indicators\** of this *Criterion\** and in Annex B4 the phrases “Delegation ... of control over management activities” and “third parties” are not used. When implementing the *Criterion\**, *The Organization\** complies with the respective *Indicators\**.

Indicator 3.2.1. Communities of *Indigenous Peoples\** identified in *Indicator\** 3.1.1 are informed when, where and how they *can\** comment on and request modification to *The Organization's\** management activities’ plans to the extent necessary to *protect\** their rights, resources, *lands and territories\**.

Indicator 3.2.2. The *legal\** and *customary rights\** of *Indigenous Peoples\** are not violated by *The Organization\**.

Indicator 3.2.3. Where evidence exists that *legal\** and *customary rights\** of *Indigenous Peoples\** have been violated as a result of *The Organization's\** management activities, the situation is corrected, if necessary, through *engagement\** and/or through the *dispute\** resolution process as required in *Indicators\** 1.6.1 or 4.6.1.

**Note:** see also *Indicator\** 1.6.4.

Indicator 3.2.4. Prior to management activities that affect the *legal\** and *customary rights\** as required in *Indicator\** 3.1.2 that are not governed by the law, however, not conflicting with it, *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\** is granted by communities of Indigenous Peoples\* for such activities according to Annex B4.

**Directive:** *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\** is not obtained for all the activities of *The Organization\**, but for particular activities held at the areas affected by the *legal\** and/or *customary rights\** as identified according to *Indicator\** 3.1.2. The process of obtaining *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\** includes:

- Informing the communities of *Indigenous Peoples\** of:
  - o the current and future planned management activities of *The Organization\**;
  - o planned timelines of their implementation; potential environmental and social *consequences\** resulting from management activities;
  - o their rights and obligations regarding the resource;
  - o their right to reasonably withhold their consent to the proposed management activities to the extent necessary to protect their rights and resources.
- Providing documented evidence of *FPIC\** (see *indicators\** 3.3.1 and 3.3.2).
- Making amendments to the *management plan\** (if necessary).

**Directive:** in a case when *customary rights\** identified according to *Indicator\** 3.1.2 are not covered in legislation, but at the same time do not contradict to it, then *FPIC\** is required as specified in the *Indicator\**. In cases when such rights contradict to legislation, then such a situation is to be considered on case by case basis, involving certification body (see FSC-STD-20-007 Forest Management Evaluations, Section 8.20).

**Criterion 3.3.** In the event of delegation of control over management activities, a *binding agreement\** between *The Organization\** and the *Indigenous Peoples\** shall\* be concluded through *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\**. The agreement shall\* define its duration, provisions for renegotiation, renewal, termination, economic conditions and other terms and conditions. The agreement shall\* make provision for monitoring by Indigenous Peoples of *The Organization's\** compliance with its terms and conditions.

**Directive:** The *Criterion\** speaks about “delegation of control over management activities...”. However, in the *Indicators\** of this *Criterion\** such a phrase is not used. This is done based on motions of FSC General Assembly 2017. Therefore, when implementing the *Criterion\**, *The Organization\** complies with the respective *Indicators\**.

Indicator 3.3.1. When *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\** is obtained, documented evidence exists that a *binding agreement\** is made between the representatives of *The Organization\** and *Indigenous Peoples\** community developed through *engagement\** with the *Indigenous Peoples\** community according to Annex B4.

**Directive:** *FPIC\** and/or *binding agreement\** made in accordance with *FPIC\** do not stipulate any material compensation from *The Organization\** to *Indigenous Peoples\**. The Directive above does not apply to *binding agreements\** made to implement activities contributing to social benefit and that do not relate to implementation of *FPIC\**.

Indicator 3.3.2. The *binding agreement*\* compiled according to Annex B4 contains:

- 1) The subject of the agreement, including the list of management activities covered by *Free, Prior and Informed Consent*\*,
- 2) Description of the *Free, Prior and Informed Consent*\* granting process,
- 3) The duration,
- 4) Provisions for renegotiation, renewal, termination,
- 5) Provision for monitoring by the *Indigenous Peoples*\* community of *The Organization's*\* compliance with its terms and conditions,
- 6) Other terms and conditions.

**Note:** The form of *binding agreement*\* is decided by the parties through *engagement*\*. This *can*\* be *cartographic material*\*, letters, agreements, protocols etc.

Indicator 3.3.3. Agreements between *The Organization*\* and *Indigenous Peoples*\* community made before this standard became effective *shall*\* be analyzed by *The Organization*\* for the compliance with the *Indicators of Criteria*\* 3.2 and 3.3 of the standard and updated, if needed, through *engagement*\* with the *Indigenous Peoples*\* community.

**Criterion 3.4** *The Organization*\* *shall*\* recognize and *uphold*\* the rights, customs and culture of *Indigenous Peoples*\* as defined in the United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples (2007) and ILO Convention 169 (1989).

**Note:** While Russian Federation has not ratified the ILO Convention 169, *The Organization*\* still upholds its requirements. This *Criterion*\* refers to the articles of the UN Declaration and ILO Convention that refer specifically to the rights, customs and culture of *Indigenous Peoples*\* related to activity of *The Organization*\* and the *Management Unit*\* (the applicable articles are stated in Annex B1). For the purposes of this *Criterion*\* “uphold” does not imply any unlimited liability of *The Organization*\*. The compliance with this *Criterion*\* exceeds *The Organization's*\* legal\* obligations in the Russian Federation. Where conflicts occur between legal\* or customary rights\* of *Indigenous Peoples*\* and other users of the resource, such conflicts are settled separately in each case and, if necessary, with the help of the dispute\* settlement mechanism stated in *Criteria*\* 1.6, 3.2 or 4.6. Where this *Criterion*\* is in conflict with the *national laws*\*, separate FSC procedures apply (see FSC-STD-20-007 Forest Management Evaluations, clause 8.20). Such ‘conflicts’ are defined as situations when it is impossible to simultaneously comply with the *Principles*\* and *Criteria*\* and laws at the same time and they are therefore assessed by the certification body individually upon agreement with *Interested Stakeholders*\* or *Affected Stakeholders*\*.

Indicator 3.4.1. The rights, customs and culture of *Indigenous Peoples*\* as defined in UNDRIP and ILO Convention 169 are not violated by *The Organization*\*.

Indicator 3.4.2. Where evidence exists that rights, customs and culture of *Indigenous Peoples\**, as defined in UNDRIP and ILO Convention 169, have been violated by *The Organization\**, the situation is documented including steps to *restore\** these rights, customs and culture of *Indigenous Peoples\**, to the satisfaction of the rights holders.

**Criterion 3.5.** *The Organization\**, through *engagement\** with *Indigenous Peoples\**, shall\* identify sites which are of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance and for which these Indigenous Peoples hold *legal\** or *customary rights\**. These sites shall\* be recognized by *The Organization\** and their management, and/or *protection\** shall\* be agreed through *engagement\** with these Indigenous Peoples.

**Note:** HCV\* 5 and 6, according to Annex D1 (National Interpretation of HCV Types and Subtypes), also includes sites, which are of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance for *Indigenous Peoples\**.

Indicator 3.5.1. Sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance for *Indigenous Peoples\** are identified according to *Indicators\** 9.1.1-9.1.4.

Indicator 3.5.2. Measures to *protect\** sites identified in *Indicator\** 3.5.1 are developed according to *Indicators\** 9.2.1 and 9.2.2.

Indicator 3.5.3. Measures to *protect\** sites identified in *Indicator\** 3.5.1 are implemented according to *Indicators\** 9.3.1 and 9.3.2.

**Criterion 3.6.** *The Organization\** shall\* uphold\* the right of *Indigenous Peoples\** to *protect\** and utilize their traditional *knowledge\** and shall\* compensate *local communities\** for the utilization of such knowledge and their *intellectual property\**. A *binding agreement\** as per *Criterion\** 3.3 shall\* be concluded between *The Organization\** and the Indigenous Peoples for such utilization through *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\** before utilization takes place, and shall\* be consistent with the *protection\** of *intellectual property\** rights.

**Directive:** the *Criterion\** is applicable only for *The Organizations\** dealing with harvesting and extraction of food or other non-timber forest products\* as well as recreational activities. In the Russian Federation, examples of the use of traditional knowledge\* of Indigenous Peoples\* by *The Organizations\** dealing with timber harvesting are unknown. Therefore, if *The Organization\** deals only with timber harvesting and related management activities and the Indigenous Peoples\* did not submit claims regarding the use of their *traditional knowledge\**, the *Criterion\** is not applicable. Examples of *traditional knowledge\** are identification and use of specific flora and fauna species and their products, etc.

**Note:** For the purposes of this *Criterion\** “uphold\*” means the following:

- *The Organization\** does not compete with *Indigenous Peoples\** with regard to legal\* registration of their *traditional knowledge\** as their *intellectual property\** by means of patents, for example.
- Respectful treatment, preservation and maintenance of knowledge, innovations and



practices of *Indigenous Peoples\** and contribution to their wider use with the approval and participation of owners of such knowledge, innovations and practices, and joint fair utilization of the benefits related to the utilization of such knowledge, innovations and practices.

- Protection of traditional methods of utilization of biological resources in line with traditional cultural practices.

*Indigenous Peoples\*\* intellectual property\** rights refer to the knowledge that is not in the public domain. The *Criterion\** does not apply to the *traditional knowledge\** that is in the public domain.

Indicator 3.6.1. *Traditional knowledge\** and *intellectual property\** of *Indigenous Peoples\** are protected and are only used when the acknowledged owners of that *traditional knowledge\** and *intellectual property\** have provided their *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\** formalized through a *binding agreement\** as stated in 3.3.1.

Indicator 3.6.2. *Indigenous Peoples\** are compensated according to the *binding agreement\** reached through *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\** for the use of *traditional knowledge\** and *intellectual property\** according to *Indicator\** 3.3.1.

**PRINCIPLE 4: COMMUNITY RELATIONS**

*The Organization\* shall\* contribute to maintaining or enhancing the social and economic wellbeing of local communities\*.*

**Note.** All requirements regarding identification and *protection\** of sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious and spiritual values to *local communities\** and on which these communities have *legal\** or *customary rights\** are covered in *Principle\* 9* and Annex D1 of the Standard (*HCV\* 5* and *HCV\* 6*, as well as the Section *HCV\* Mapping*).

**Criterion 4.1.** *The Organization\* shall\* identify the local communities\* that exist within the Management Unit\* and those that are affected by management activities. The Organization\* shall\* then, through engagement\* with these local communities\*, identify their rights of tenure\*, their rights of access to and use of forest\* resources and ecosystem services\*, their customary rights\* and legal\* rights and obligations, that apply within the Management Unit\*.*

Indicator 4.1.1. *Local communities\*, whose interests can\* be affected by management activities of The Organization\*, are identified.*

Indicator 4.1.2. *Legal\* and customary rights\*, as well as contested rights of local communities\* identified according to Indicator\* 4.1.1 related to Management Unit\* are identified.*

Indicator 4.1.3. *Through engagement\* with the local communities\* identified according to Indicator\* 4.1.1, the following information is documented and/or shown on cartographic material\*:*

- 1) *evidence of their legal\* and customary\* rights\*.*
- 2) *areas where disputes\* with respect to such rights are identified;*
- 3) *summary of the means by which The Organization\* addresses legal\* and customary rights\*, as well as contested rights;*
- 4) *the documentary evidence of plans/intentions of local communities\* that can\* be affected by The Organization\*'s management activities.*

**Directive:** *when engaging\* with the local communities\* under Indicators\* 4.1.2 and 4.1.3, The Organization\* may\* implement the respective requirements on a step-by-step basis, not simultaneously throughout the whole Management Unit\*, but only in those areas and only with regard to the types and rates of forest use that are planned and stated in the annual management plan\*, including forest management operations and road construction. As an evidence various written sources may\* be used, as well as the results of polls, negotiations and interviews with members of the local communities\*.*

**Criterion 4.2.** *The Organization\* shall\* recognize and uphold\* the legal\* and customary rights\* of local communities\* to maintain control over management activities within or related to the Management Unit\* to the extent necessary to protect their rights, resources, lands and territories\*. Delegation by local communities\* of control over management activities to third parties requires Free, Prior and Informed Consent\*.*

**Directive:** *the Criterion\* requires to “uphold\* the ... rights\* of local communities\* to maintain control over*

management activities...”. The *Criterion\** also requires *FPIC\** for “delegation by local communities of control over management activities to third parties”. However, in the *Indicators\** of this *Criterion\** phrases such as “delegation ... of control over management activities” and “third parties” are not used. This is made based on decisions at the FSC General Assembly 2017. When meeting the requirements of the *Criterion\**, *The Organization\** is guided by the wording of the respective *Indicators\**.

Indicator 4.2.1. Information about when, where and how *local communities\** identified according to *Indicator\** 4.1.1 *can\** send their proposals on the management activities of *The Organization\**, including modifications to the *management plan\**, to protect their rights, is communicated to the inhabitants of each respective settlement (village).

**Directive:** it is not mandatory to contact each inhabitant directly to inform the villagers of each settlement (village). The communication *can\**, for example, be made through representatives of local self-government at the level of rural settlements and bodies of territorial local self-government by making publications in social networks or other internet resources as well as by any other way convenient for local people

Indicator 4.2.2. *Legal and customary rights\** of *local communities\** are not violated by *The Organization\**.

Indicator 4.2.3. Where evidence exists that *legal\** and *customary rights\** of *local communities\** have been violated as a result of *The Organization's\** management activities, the situation is corrected, if necessary, through *engagement\** and/or through the *dispute\** resolution process as required in *Indicators\** 1.6.1 or 4.6.1.

**Note:** see also Indicator\* 1.6.4.

Indicator 4.2.4. *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\** is granted by *local communities\** to *The Organization\** according to Annex B4 prior to the management activities that affect the *legal and customary rights\** of the *local communities\** identified according to *Indicator\** 4.1.2.

**Directive:** *FPIC\** is granted not on *The Organization's\** activities in general, but only on specific activities that affect *legal rights\** and/or *customary rights\** of the *local communities\**.

The process of obtaining *FPIC\** includes:

- Informing the *local communities\* of*:
  - o the current and future planned management activities of *The Organization\**;
  - o planned timelines of their implementation;
  - o potential environmental and social *consequences\** resulting from management activities;
  - o their rights and obligations regarding the resource;
  - o their right to reasonably withhold their consent to the proposed management activities to the extent necessary to protect their rights and resources.
- Providing documented evidence of *FPIC\**.
- Making amendments to the *management plan\** (if necessary).

**Directive:** in a case when *customary rights\** identified according to *Indicator\** 4.1.2 are not covered in

legislation, but at the same time do not contradict to it, then *FPIC\** is required as specified in the *Indicator\**. In cases when such rights contradict to legislation, then such a situation is to be considered on case by case basis, involving certification body (see FSC-STD-20-007 Forest Management Evaluations, Section 8.20).

**Directive:** *FPIC\** and/or *binding agreement\** made in accordance to *FPIC\** do not stipulate any material compensation from *The Organization\** to *local communities\**. The Directive above does not apply to *binding agreements\** made to ensure implementation of activities that contribute to social benefit and that do not relate to implementation of *FPIC\**

**Criterion 4.3.** *The Organization\* shall\* provide reasonable\* opportunities for employment, training and other services to local communities\*, contractors and suppliers proportionate to scale\* and intensity\* of its management activities.*

Indicator 4.3.1. In areas of *current activities of The Organization\**, *reasonable\** opportunities are communicated and provided to *local communities\**, including local contractors and suppliers, for:

- 1) employment,
- 2) training and
- 3) obtaining other services.

**Criterion 4.4.** *The Organization\* shall\* implement additional activities, through engagement\* with local communities\*, that contribute to their social and economic development, proportionate to the scale\*, intensity\* and socio-economic impact of its management activities.*

**Directive:** *The Organization\* may\* implement the respective requirements on a step-by-step basis, proportionate to the scale\* and intensity\* of management activities, i.e. not simultaneously throughout the whole Management Unit\*, but only in those areas and only with regard to the types and rates of forest use that are planned and stated in the annual management plan\*.*

Indicator 4.4.1 Through *engagement\** with *local communities\**, *The Organization\** identified opportunities for additional activities for social and economic development proportionate to the *scale\** and *intensity\** and socio-economic consequences of its management activities.

**Directive:**-The following thresholds determining the *scale\** and *intensity\** of the potential socio-economic impact of *The Organization\** on *local communities\** are established:

1. *The Organizations\** that either in accordance to criteria set by the Ministry of Taxes and Duties of the Russian Federation are referred to as the largest tax payers:
  - *The Organization's\** annual turnover exceeds 10 billion rubles and/or
  - *The Organization\** is interdependent with a largest tax payer (in accordance with Article 105.1 of the Tax Code of the Russian Federation).

Or *The Organizations\** that are not tax payers at the location of *managed areas\**.

2. The rest of *The Organizations*\*

Requirements for *The Organizations*\* that refer to item 1:

The *engagement*\* is done through formalized consultations both with representatives of various branches of authorities and with opinion leaders, public initiative groups and other representatives of *local communities*\*, concluding social partnership agreements or any other binding agreements, and realization of a socio-economic strategy that specifies characteristics of social partnership and the financial planning procedure of its implementation.

Ways of supporting socio-economic development of *local communities*\* *may*\* include the following activities:

1. implementation of social educational projects or participation in such projects,
2. employment programs for local people,
3. financial and non-financial participation in regional and municipal-level social programs,
4. charitable programs,
5. voluntary insurance for employees,
6. activities to improve working conditions, and
7. development and maintenance of road and transport infrastructure.

Requirements for *The Organizations*\* that refer to item 2:

The *engagement*\* is done through consultations, including informal, with representatives of local *affected stakeholders*\*. Possible additional socio-economic development activities are support of local social and cultural initiatives, target financial or nonfinancial assistance, contribution to the maintenance of local infrastructure and supply of the population with fuelwood.

**Note:** Criteria to refer to as the largest tax payers given in the Directive are as of the date of the Standard approval and *can*\* be changed by the relevant decision of the competent authority.

Indicator 4.4.2. Additional activities on social and economic development are implemented in accordance with *Indicator*\* 4.4.1.

**Criterion 4.5.** *The Organization*\*, through *engagement*\* with *local communities*\*, *shall*\* take action to identify, avoid and mitigate *significant*\* negative social, environmental and economic impacts of its management activities on affected communities. The action taken *shall*\* be proportionate to the *scale, intensity and risk*\* of those activities and negative impacts.

Indicator 4.5.1 Through *engagement*\* with *local communities*\* measures are developed and implemented by *The Organization*\* that are aimed to mitigate, repair and prevent *significant*\* negative social, ecological and economic *consequences*\* of *current activities of The Organization*\* for *local communities*\*.

Indicator 4.5.2. Actions are taken to minimize, eliminate and prevent repetition of negative *consequences*\* in the future in accordance with *Indicator*\* 4.5.1.

Indicator 4.5.3. *Workers\** of *The Organization\** responsible for *engagement\** with *local communities\** affected by management activities have appropriate knowledge on:

- 1) how to prepare information regarding planned management activities;
- 2) ways and processes of communicating the information to *local communities\**;
- 3) procedures for taking into account opinions of *local communities\** and communicating the taken decisions to them.

**Criterion 4.6.** *The Organization\**, through *engagement\** with *local communities\**, *shall\** have mechanisms for resolving grievances and providing *fair compensation\** to *local communities\** and individuals with regard to the impacts of management activities of *The Organization\**.

Indicator 4.6.1 A *publicly available\** procedure for considering and resolving *disputes\** and grievances, as well as providing *fair compensation\** with regard to negative *consequences\** of management activities of *The Organization\** is in place, being developed through *engagement\** with *local communities\** and other *affected stakeholders\**.

Indicator 4.6.2. Grievances related to the *consequences\** of management activities of *The Organization\** are responded to in a *timely manner\**, and are either resolved or are in the *dispute\** resolution process.

**Note:** see *Indicator\** 1.6.4 as well.

Indicator 4.6.3. *The Organization\** keeps record of incoming grievances, including the following information:

- 1) full name of the addresser;
- 2) submission date of the grievance;
- 3) summary of the grievance;
- 4) description of the grievance resolution process;
- 5) outcomes of the grievance resolution process;
- 6) steps taken to resolve the grievance, including *fair compensations\** if the grievance is found justified;
- 7) date of informing the addresser about processing of the grievance.

**Criterion 4.7** *The Organization\**, through *engagement\** with *local communities\**, *shall\** identify sites which are of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance, and for which these *local communities\** hold *legal\** or *customary rights\**. These sites *shall\** be recognized by *The Organization\**, and their management and/or *protection\** *shall\** be agreed through *engagement\** with these *local communities\**.

**Note:** *HCV\** 5 and 6, according to Annex D1 (National Interpretation of HCV Types and Subtypes), also includes sites, which are of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance for *local communities\**.

Indicator 4.7.1. Sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance for *local communities\** are identified according to *Indicators\** 9.1.1-9.1.4.

Indicator 4.7.2. Measures to *protect*\* sites identified in *Indicator*\* 4.7.1 are developed according to *Indicators*\* 9.2.1, 9.2.2.

Indicator 4.7.3. Measures to *protect*\* sites identified in *Indicator*\* 4.7.1 are implemented according to *Indicators*\* 9.3.1 and 9.3.2.

**Criterion 4.8** The *Organization*\* shall\* uphold\* the right of *local communities*\* to protect\* and utilize their *traditional knowledge*\* and shall\* compensate *local communities*\* for the utilization of such knowledge and their *intellectual property*\*. A *binding agreement*\* as per *Criterion*\* 3.3 shall\* be concluded between *The Organization*\* and the *local communities*\* for such utilization through *Free, Prior and Informed Consent*\* before utilization takes place, and shall\* be consistent with the *protection*\* of *intellectual property*\* rights.

**Directive:** The *Criterion*\* is applicable only for *The Organizations*\* dealing with harvesting and extraction of food or other *non-timber forest products*\* as well as recreational activities. In the Russian Federation, examples of the use of *traditional knowledge*\* of *local communities*\* by *The Organizations*\* dealing with timber harvesting are unknown. Therefore, if *The Organization*\* deals only with timber harvesting and related management activities and the *local communities*\* did not submit claims regarding the use of their *traditional knowledge*\*, the *Criterion*\* is not applicable. Examples of *traditional knowledge*\* are identification and use of specific flora and fauna species and their products, etc.

**Note:** For the purposes of this *Criterion*\* “uphold\*” means the following:

- *The Organization*\* does not compete with *local communities*\* with regard to legal\* registration of their *traditional knowledge*\* as their *intellectual property*\* by means of patents, for example.
- Respectful treatment, preservation and maintenance of knowledge, innovations and practices of *local communities*\* and contribution to their wider use with the approval and participation of owners of such knowledge, innovations and practices, and joint fair utilization of the benefits related to the utilization of such knowledge, innovations and practices.
- Protection of traditional methods of utilization of biological resources in line with traditional cultural practices.

*Local communities*\* *intellectual property*\* rights refer to the knowledge that is not in the public domain. The *Criterion*\* does not apply to the *traditional knowledge*\* that is in the public domain.

Indicator 4.8.1. In a case *The Organization*\* is going to use *traditional knowledge*\* and *intellectual property*\* of *local communities*\*, such *knowledge*\* and *intellectual property*\* are identified and protected and are only used when their respective owners have provided their *Free, Prior and Informed Consent*\*.

Indicator 4.8.2. *Local communities*\* are compensated according to the *binding agreement*\* (*Criterion*\* 3.3) reached through *Free, Prior and Informed Consent*\* for the use of *traditional knowledge*\* and *intellectual property*\*.

**PRINCIPLE 5: BENEFITS FROM THE FOREST**

*The Organization\* shall\* efficiently manage the range of multiple products and services of the Management Unit\* to maintain or enhance long-term\* economic viability\* and the range of social and environmental benefits.*

**Criterion 5.1.** *The Organization\* shall\* identify, produce, or enable the production of, diversified benefits and/or products, based on the range of resources and ecosystem services\* existing in the Management Unit\* in order to strengthen and diversify the local economy proportionate to the scale\* and intensity\* of management activities.*

**Note:** identification and assessment of various services and products based on resources and ecosystem services\* identified in the Management Unit\* (Indicator\* 5.1.1) may\* be made on a step-by-step basis, not simultaneously throughout the whole Management Unit\*, but only in those areas and only with regard to the types and rates of forest use that are planned and stated in the annual management plan\*. In order to strengthen and diversify the local economy, the production of such services and products would be appropriate in the first place in those sites where The Organization\* has such opportunities, taking into account the needs of local communities\* in services and products.

Indicator 5.1.1. Within the Management Unit\* ecosystem services\*, including timber and non-timber forest products\*, that can\* strengthen or diversify the local economy are identified.

Indicator 5.1.2. Consistent with management objectives\*, the identified benefits and products are produced by The Organization\* and/or made available for others to produce, to strengthen and diversify the local economy.

Indicator 5.1.3: When The Organization\* uses FSC Ecosystem Services Claims, The Organization\* shall\* comply with applicable requirements in FSC-PRO-30-006.

**Criterion 5.2.** *The Organization\* shall\* normally harvest products and services from the Management Unit\* at or below a level which can be permanently sustained.*

Indicator 5.2.1. The sustainable timber harvest level\* and non-timber forest products\* harvest level is calculated based on inventory materials that are less than 15 years old.

Indicator 5.2.2. The following stands are excluded from the calculation of the sustainable timber harvest level\* if in total they make up more than 5% of the area covered by forest within the managed area\*:

- 1) lost as a result of natural disturbances (wildfires, windfalls, sources of diseases) and other causes if unreported in materials of the last forest inventory;
- 2) areas with restricted use, which were not taken into account in the materials of the last forest inventory (HCV\* areas, representative sample areas\* and other areas where The Organization\* voluntarily imposed restrictions on timber harvesting).

**Directive:** areas whose management regime does not prohibit timber harvesting are excluded from the calculation of the sustainable timber harvesting level\* only if The Organization\* is not going to harvest

timber in these areas.

If *intact forest landscapes\** are present within the *Management Unit\**, the sustainability of forest use as a whole and of the coniferous section (*khvoynaya khozyaystvennaya sektsiya*) in particular is calculated and maintained, excluding parts of *IFL\** subject to *conservation\** in accordance with decisions by government bodies or voluntarily in accordance with the requirements of *Principle\** 9. In this case, actual timber harvesting levels are adjusted with the *sustainable timber harvesting levels\** prior to the harvest within *IFL\**.

Indicator 5.2.3 The calculations of the *sustainable timber harvesting level\**, accounting for parts of *IFLs\** subject to *conservation\** and forest management restrictions specified for parts of *IFLs\** where forest management is permitted *shall\** be made *publicly available\**.

Indicator 5.2.4. The *sustainable timber harvesting level\** is calculated for each *managed area\** separately, individually for each species management section (*khozyaystvennaya sektsiya*) and in total by species groups (*khozyaystvo*), for protected and commercial forests, for clearcutting and selective cutting for the period not smaller than the felling age.

**Directive:** if necessary, it is possible to make a separate calculation for shelterwood harvesting (*postepennye rubki*). For the purpose of the calculation it is permitted to combine several species management sections of the same felling age together.

Thinning operations (if thinning is conducted before the maturity age) and salvage clearcuts (if the respective forest losses are taken into account according to *Indicator\** 5.2.2) are not included in calculation of the *sustainable timber harvesting level\**.

Indicator 5.2.5. The calculation of the annual *sustainable timber harvesting level\** does not permit for:

- 1) in coniferous and noble hardwood species groups, reduction of this level in any particular year within the calculated period for clearcutting and shelterwood felling;
- 2) for clearcutting and shelterwood felling in softleaf/broadleaf species group, this level to exceed the timber harvest level as specified in the forest concession management plan (*proyekt osvoeniya lesov*);
- 3) for selective cutting of mature and overmature stands, this level to exceed the annual yield for a particular species management section (group of sections or species group section).

Indicator 5.2.6. A value according to *Indicator\** 5.2.4 is recalculated for the *managed area\** (not later than one year after information about changes became available) in the following cases:

- 1) its boundaries were changed;
- 2) new forest inventory materials are approved; and
- 3) changes were identified, including based on monitoring results, due to the forest loss and/or changes in the *conservation\** measures according to *Indicator\** 5.2.2.

Indicator 5.2.7. The actual annual timber harvesting level (in cubic meters) in merchantable timber for all types of harvesting in mature and overmature forests *shall\** not exceed the annual *sustainable timber harvesting level\** for each species group section (khozyaystvo).

**Directive:** it is permitted to harvest timber at the rate exceeding the *sustainable timber harvesting level\** under condition that the overall volume of timber harvested over three consecutive years does not exceed the three-year sum of the respective *sustainable timber harvesting levels\**.

Indicator 5.2.8. Actual extraction level of *non-timber forest products\** does not result in the reduction of growth or reduction of productivity of other *forest\** resources of the *managed area* or *areas\** considering maintenance and enhancement of *ecosystem services\**.

Indicator 5.2.9. Harvest techniques, seasons and sustainable *non-timber forest products\** harvesting level are defined for each type of *non-timber forest product\** on the base of combination of scientific research and/or long-standing local experience.

Indicator 5.2.10. The actual annual *non-timber forest products\** harvesting level in units of measures, defined by requirements of forest concession management plan, for all *non-timber forest products\** types does not exceed annual sustainable *non-timber forest products\** harvesting level for the *managed area\**.

**Directive:** the planned annual extraction levels of *non-timber forest products\** are quantitatively calculated only if *The Organization\** harvest them for commercial purposes.

It is permitted to harvest *non-timber forest products\** at the rate exceeding the annual planned harvesting level under condition that the overall level of *non-timber forest products\** extracted over three consecutive years does not exceed the three-year sum of the respective planned harvesting levels.

**Criterion 5.3.** *The Organization\** *shall\** demonstrate that the positive and negative *externalities\** of operations are included in the *management plan\**.

Indicator 5.3.1. *Management plan\** contains description of positive and negative environmental and social impacts of management activities of *The Organization\**, including potential benefits and costs related to these impacts.

**Criterion 5.4.** *The Organization\** *shall\** use local processing, local services, and local value adding to meet the requirements of *The Organization\** where these are available, proportionate to *scale, intensity and risk\**. If these are not locally available, *The Organization\** *shall\** make *reasonable\** attempts to help establish these services.

**Directive:** opportunities for local processing, local services, and local value adding to meet the requirements of *The Organization\** *may\** be assessed on a step by step basis, not simultaneously throughout the whole *Management Unit\**, but only in those areas and only with regard to the types and rates of forest use that are planned and stated in the annual *management plan\**. The use of these services and production for satisfying the needs of *The Organization\** would be appropriate in first place in areas where such opportunities exist and considering *The Organization\**'s needs in local services.



Indicator 5.4.1. Local businesses situated within the *Management Unit*\* or nearby and the people living within the *Management Unit*\* or nearby are given preference in fulfilling works and providing services for *The Organization*\* with all other conditions being equal, including appropriate cost and quality.

Indicator 5.4.2. *Reasonable*\* measures are undertaken to create opportunities for local businesses and local people to use *forest*\* and render services.

**Criterion 5.5.** *The Organization*\* shall\* demonstrate through its planning and expenditures proportionate to *scale, intensity and risk*\*, its commitment to *long-term*\* *economic viability*\*.

Indicator 5.5.1. *The Organization*\* provides sufficient funding to implement those provisions of the *management plan*\* that are aimed to meet with the requirements of the Standard and to ensure *long-term*\* *economic viability*\*.

Indicator 5.5.2. *The Organization*\* makes all current expenditures and investments specified in the *management plan*\* aimed to meet with the requirements of the Standard and to ensure *long-term*\* *economic viability*\*.

**PRINCIPLE 6: ENVIRONMENTAL VALUES\* AND IMPACTS**

*The Organization\* shall\* maintain, conserve\* and/or restore\* ecosystem services\* and environmental values\* of the Management Unit\*, and shall\* avoid, repair or mitigate negative environmental impacts.*

**Criterion 6.1.** *The Organization\* shall\* assess environmental values\* in the Management Unit\* and those values outside the Management Unit\* potentially affected by management activities. This assessment shall\* be undertaken with a level of detail, scale and frequency that is proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk\* of management activities, and is sufficient for the purpose of deciding the necessary conservation\* measures, and for detecting and monitoring possible negative impacts of those activities.*

Indicator 6.1.1. Based on *Best Available Information\**, *The Organization\** made a list of *environmental values\**, including those promoting carbon sequestration, which *can\** be affected by *The Organization's\** management activities. This list is created for a particular *managed area\** or a group of such areas, if they have common natural conditions, and whenever it is relevant for the adjacent area.

**Directive:** the list includes:

- Identified *HCV\** types and subtypes (list according to *Criterion\** 9.1);
- *Rare\** and *threatened species\** and their *habitats\** (list according to *Indicator\** 6.4.1);
- *Native ecosystems\**, whose *protection\** requires designation of *Representative Sample Areas\** (list according to *Indicator\** 6.5.1);
- Types of key habitats (*habitat features\**), which are present or likely to occur (list according to *Indicator\** 6.6.1 and Annex C);
- Types of *water bodies\** and the characteristics of their water protection zones (list according to *Indicator\** 6.7.1);

**Directive:** the list of *values\** *may\** be made for a particular *managed area\** or a group of such areas if they occur under the same natural conditions. *The Organization\** *may\** add other types of relevant *environmental values\** to the list that are of significance for its activities (for example, *landscape values\**, *ecosystem functions\**, etc.).

The following information *may\** be used, if necessary:

1. information from other executive or local self-governance authorities;
2. consultations with *affected stakeholders\**;
3. materials of field and other research conducted within the *managed area* or *areas\** by *The Organization\** or other parties; and
4. topographic maps of any scale.

Indicator 6.1.2. The list of *environmental values\** is updated, if boundaries of *Management Unit\** are changed, new *Best Available Information\** becomes available, or, if necessary, it is required by the results of the monitoring.

<p><b>Criterion 6.2.</b> Prior to the start of site-disturbing activities, <i>The Organization* shall* identify</i> and assess the <i>scale, intensity and risk*</i> of potential impacts of management activities on the identified <i>environmental values*</i>.</p>
<p>Indicator 6.2.1. Prior to the start of site-disturbing activities, <i>The Organization*</i> conducted <i>environmental impact assessment*</i>, including identification and evaluation of potential negative <i>consequences*</i> (based on Annex E) of management activities for <i>environmental values*</i> (as listed in the <i>Indicator*</i> 6.1.1), both at the <i>local*</i> (harvest area) and the <i>landscape level*</i>.</p>
<p><b>Criterion 6.3.</b> <i>The Organization* shall*</i> identify and implement effective actions to prevent negative impacts of management activities on the <i>environmental values*</i>, and to mitigate and repair those that occur, proportionate to the <i>scale, intensity and risk*</i> of these impacts.</p>
<p>Indicator 6.3.1. Management activities are planned and implemented to prevent or mitigate <i>impacts*</i> which <i>can*</i> lead to negative <i>consequences*</i> for <i>environmental values*</i> (based on Annex E).</p> <p><b>Note:</b> negative impact on <i>environmental values*</i> that promote carbon sequestration is minimized by protecting <i>HCV*</i> areas (according to the <i>Indicator*</i> 9.1.1), designation of other <i>protection areas*</i> (including <i>Representative Sample Areas*</i> according to <i>Indicators*</i> 6.5.3 and 6.5.4), not exceeding the <i>sustainable timber harvest level*</i> (according to <i>Indicator*</i> 5.2.2), as well as by protecting <i>key habitats*</i> (<i>habitat features*</i>) (according to <i>Indicator*</i> 6.6.2).</p>
<p>Indicator 6.3.2. Where negative <i>consequences*</i> occur as a result of <i>The Organization's*</i> current or previous management activities, <i>reasonable*</i> measures are undertaken to eliminate them, prevent further damage and <i>repair* environmental values*</i>.</p>
<p>Indicator 6.3.3. <i>Workers*</i> of <i>The Organization*</i> are familiarized with the materials obtained according to <i>Indicator*</i> 6.2.1 to the extent (in part) related to their job responsibilities and apply them at their work places.</p>
<p><b>Criterion 6.4.</b> <i>The Organization* shall*</i> protect <i>rare species*</i> and <i>threatened species*</i> and their <i>habitats*</i> in the <i>Management Unit*</i> through <i>conservation zones*</i>, <i>protection areas*</i>, <i>connectivity*</i> and/or (where necessary) other direct measures for their survival and viability. These measures <i>shall*</i> be proportionate to the <i>scale, intensity and risk*</i> of management activities and to the <i>conservation*</i> status and ecological requirements of the <i>rare and threatened species*</i>. <i>The Organization* shall*</i> take into account the geographic range and ecological requirements of <i>rare and threatened species*</i> beyond the boundary of the <i>Management Unit*</i>, when determining the measures to be taken inside the <i>Management Unit*</i>.</p>
<p>Indicator 6.4.1. <i>The Organization*</i>, using <i>Best Available Information*</i>, identifies <i>rare*</i> and <i>threatened species*</i> that occur or likely to occur within the <i>managed area*</i> or <i>areas*</i>, and their <i>habitats*</i>, including CITES species (applicable, if the <i>managed area*</i> is located within the <i>range*</i> of CITES species or if <i>The Organization*</i> harvests CITES species or involved in trading there of).</p>
<p>Indicator 6.4.2. Habitats of <i>rare*</i> and <i>threatened species*</i> identified by <i>The Organization*</i> are shown on <i>cartographic material*</i>.</p>

Indicator 6.4.3. *Cartographic material\** with depicted *habitats\** of commercially threatened *rare\** and *threatened species\** are not made *publicly available\** and are not used for planning hunting by *The Organization\**.

Indicator 6.4.4. The *rare\** and *threatened species\** and their *habitats\** are protected, including through:

- 1) *protection\** of all identified *habitats\** of *rare* and *threatened species\** taking into account their respective buffer zones according to *Indicator\** 6.4.1 and Annex C;
- 2) *conservation\** of *key habitats\** according to *Indicators\** 6.6.1 and 6.6.2 and Annex C;
- 3) creation of *conservation area network\** according to *Indicator\** 6.8.1; and
- 4) other means providing for the survival and viability of *rare\** and *threatened species\**, including ensuring *connectivity\** of *water bodies\** (according to *Criterion\** 6.7) and maintaining and/or *restoration\** of the whole stand range according to *Criterion\** 6.8.

Indicator 6.4.5. *The Organization\** and its *workers\** are not involved in illegal trapping and collection of *rare\** and *threatened species\**, including CITES species, and, if necessary, take all possible measures to prevent and terminate any such activities within the *Management Unit\** using legal measures available for *The Organization\**.

**Criterion 6.5** *The Organization\* shall\* identify and protect representative sample areas\* of native ecosystems\* and/or restore\* them to more natural conditions\*. Where representative sample areas\* do not exist or are insufficient, The Organization\* shall\* restore\* a proportion of the Management Unit\* to more natural conditions\*. The size of the areas and the measures taken for their protection or restoration, including within plantations, shall\* be proportionate to the conservation\* status and value of the ecosystems\* at the landscape\* level, and the scale, intensity and risk\* of management activities.*

Indicator 6.5.1. Based on *Best Available Information\**, the list of types of *ecosystems\** that refer to native *ecosystems\**, including non-forest ones (wetlands, meadows, etc.) but only for those, in which *The Organization\** has management activities, is compiled for the *Management Unit\**.

**Note:** *The Organization\* may\* choose any typological scheme, including forest types according to inventory materials.*

Indicator 6.5.2. *Representative sample areas\** are identified within each type of forest and non-forest (if applicable) *ecosystems\**.

**Directive:** The size of *representative sample areas\** within each type of forest and non-forest *ecosystems\** is defined based on their conservation status and *value\**, as well as *risks\** of negative *consequences\**.

When choosing *Representative Sample Areas\** the priority is given to areas in most *natural conditions\** within each type of *native ecosystems\**. The preference is also given to larger areas, exception *may\** be made for rare and non-forest *ecosystems\**. If the *managed area\** is small, *representative sample areas\** of the same type *may\** be located compactly. If the *managed area\** is large, it is preferable that the spatial location of *representative sample areas\** reflects the distribution of *native ecosystems\** within the *managed area\**.

Indicator 6.5.3. Where some *native ecosystems\** identified according to *Indicator\* 6.5.1* do not exist or are inadequately represented as *Representative Sample Areas\**, samples of such ecosystems with the highest potential of restoration to their *natural condition\** are identified and designated as *Representative Sample Areas\** as specified in *Indicator\* 6.5.2*.

**Note:** in practice such areas *may\** be selected from undermature, middle-aged and young stands composed of *native species\**, including late-successional tree species, considering possible species succession.

Indicator 6.5.4. *Representative Sample Areas\* of native ecosystems\** are preserved in *natural conditions\**.

Indicator 6.5.5. The total size of *Representative Sample Areas\** in combination with other components of the *conservation areas network\** comprise a minimum 10% area of the *managed area or areas\**.

**Criterion 6.6.** *The Organization\* shall\** effectively maintain the continued existence of naturally occurring *native species\** and *genotypes\**, and prevent losses of *biological diversity\**, especially through *habitat\** management in the *Management Unit\**. *The Organization\* shall\** demonstrate that effective measures are in place to manage and control hunting, fishing, trapping and collecting.

Indicator 6.6.1. Based on the *Best Available Information\**, such as that identified in Annex C, *The Organization\** made a list of *key habitats\* (habitat features\*)* typical for the *native ecosystems\** of *managed areas\**, defined their identification characteristics and developed procedures for their identification and *conservation\** measures.

**Note:** The *key habitats\** are mainly identified at the level of harvest area (during timber harvesting both during delineation of harvest area and harvesting operations). Larger sites, such as sub-compartment (*lesokhozyaystvenny vydel*) and greater, if appropriate, should be identified in the process of *HCV\** identification. Such sites *may\** be identified at different stages of management planning. It is *The Organization\** that takes a decision whether such sites are referred to as *HCV\** or *key habitats\**.

Indicator 6.6.2. *Key habitats\** defined according to *Indicator\* 6.6.1* are protected.

Indicator 6.6.3. Where past management has eliminated *key habitats\**, *reasonable\** measures aimed at their *restoration\** are taken.

**Note:** Measures on *restoration\** of lost *habitat features\** *may\** be applied e.g. in secondary forests, in which trees corresponding to *habitat features\** no.11, 12, and 13 (see Annex C) are almost absent. In such cases individual trees or tree patches should be left in order to ensure that old-growth trees and deadwood at different stages of decomposition as well as species of living organisms depend on them will be present in future in the stand.

Indicator 6.6.4. Measures are in place to control hunting, fishing, trapping and collecting.

**Directive:** the *indicator\** is applicable only if *The Organization\** conducts such activities within the *managed area\**.



**Criterion 6.7.** *The Organization\* shall\* protect\* or restore\* natural watercourses, water bodies\*, riparian zones\* and their connectivity\*. The Organization\* shall\* avoid negative impacts on water quality and quantity and mitigate and remedy those that occur.*

**Note:** in the *Indicators\** of the *Criterion\** the term “*water bodies\**” is used, as according to the Water Code of the Russian Federation it also covers natural *watercourses\**, including temporary ones. The *Indicators\** of the *Criterion\** instead of the term *riparian zones\** use the terms “water protection zones” and “near-shore protective belts” in accordance to the Water Code of the Russian Federation.

Indicator 6.7.1. The management regime in water protection zones and near-shore protective belts established in accordance to the Water Code of the Russian Federation is observed.

Indicator 6.7.2. Where negative *consequences\** as a result of *The Organization's\** past or present management activities are identified for *water bodies\**, measures are implemented that prevent or mitigate the damage.

**Criterion 6.8.** *The Organization\* shall\* manage the landscape\* in the Management Unit\* to maintain and/or restore\* a varying mosaic of species, sizes, ages, spatial scales\* and regeneration cycles appropriate for the landscape values\* in that region, and for enhancing environmental and economic resilience\*.*

Indicator 6.8.1. *The Organization's\* workers\** in charge of management activities planning and performance are provided with the information about the *conservation area network\** and respective management regimes.

Indicator 6.8.2. *The Organization\* shall\* ensure that species occurring in stands prior to harvest are preserved at the harvest area.*

**Directive:** this requirement does not mean that trees of all species occurring prior to harvest are preserved at each harvest area.

Indicator 6.8.3. *The Organization\** has identified the tree species that *can\** become rare or extinct from the *managed area\* or areas\** as a result of the management operations, and took measures to protect them.

**Note:** It *may\** be implemented by various means: through retention of tree clumps, undergrowth, identification of *habitat features\** and conservation areas, etc.

Indicator 6.8.4. In case of individual clearcuts (as well as after the final cut in the shelterwood system) greater than 15 ha, a mosaic *forest\* landscape\** represented by wind resistant belts and tree clumps is maintained. The diameter (width) of the belts and tree clumps exceeds at least by one and a half times the average height of the preserved stand. The size of belts and clumps *shall\** comprise minimum 10% area of the harvest area.

**Directive:** any stand patches being preserved at the harvest area for any reason (seed tree clumps and strips, *key habitats\**, Special Protection Parcels of Forests, etc.) *may\** be counted as the above belts and tree clumps. When calculating the share of retention belts and tree clumps, one *may\** count as such

forest patches excluded from management operations (*Representative Sample Areas\**, *HCV\** forests, etc.) and areas where only selective cuts are used. In case when such patches exist within the 50-m strip along the border of the harvest area, the whole zone and such patches *may\** be also taken into account during the calculation of the proportion.

**Criterion 6.9.** *The Organization\* shall\* not convert natural forest\* to plantations\*, nor natural forests\* or plantations\* on sites directly converted from natural forest\* to non-forest\* land use, except when the conversion:*

- a) Affects a *very limited portion\** of the area of the *Management Unit\**, and
- b) Will produce clear, substantial, additional, secure long-term *conservation\** benefits in the *Management Unit\**, and
- c) Does not damage or threaten *High Conservation Values\**, nor any sites or resources necessary to maintain or enhance those *High Conservation Values\**.

Indicator 6.9.1. There is no conversion of *natural forest\** to *plantations\**, nor conversion of *natural forests\** to *non-forest\** land use, nor conversion of *plantations\** on sites directly converted from *natural forest\** to non-forest land use, except when the conversion:

- 1) Affects a *very limited portion\** of the *Management Unit\**, and
- 2) The conversion will produce clear, substantial, additional, secure, *long-term\* conservation\** benefits in the *Management Unit\**; and
- 3) Does not damage or threaten *High Conservation Values\**, nor any sites or resources necessary to maintain or enhance those *High Conservation Values\**.

**Criterion 6.10.** *Management Units\* containing plantations\* that were established on areas converted from natural forest\* after November 1994 shall\* not qualify for certification, except where:*

- a) Clear and sufficient evidence is provided that *The Organization\** was not directly or indirectly responsible for the conversion, or
- b) The conversion affected a *very limited portion\** of the area of the *Management Unit\** and is producing clear, substantial, additional, secure, long-term *conservation\** benefits in the *Management Unit\**.

Indicator 6.10.1. Based on *Best Available Information\**, accurate data is compiled on all conversions since 1994.

Indicator 6.10.2. Areas converted from natural forest\* to plantation\* since November 1994 are not certified, except where:

- 1) The Organization\* provides clear and sufficient evidence that it was not directly or indirectly responsible for the conversion; or
- 2) The conversion is producing clear, substantial, additional, secure, long-term *conservation\** benefits in the *Management Unit\**; and
- 3) The total area of plantation\* on sites converted from natural forest\* since November 1994 is less than 5% of the total area of the *Management Unit\**.

**PRINCIPLE 7: MANAGEMENT PLANNING**

*The Organization\* shall\* have a management plan\* consistent with its policies and objectives\* and proportionate to scale, intensity and risks\* of its management activities. The management plan\* shall\* be implemented and kept up to date based on monitoring information in order to promote adaptive management\*. The associated planning and procedural documentation shall\* be sufficient to guide staff, inform affected stakeholders\* and interested stakeholders\* and to justify management decisions.*

**Criterion 7.1.** *The Organization\* shall\*, proportionate to scale, intensity and risk\* of its management activities, set policies (visions and values) and objectives\* for management, which are environmentally sound, socially beneficial and economically viable. Summaries of these policies and objectives\* shall\* be incorporated into the management plan\*, and publicized.*

Indicator 7.1.1. Policies that contribute to environmentally sound, socially beneficial and economically viable forest management, while considering meeting the requirements of the Russian legislation and the commitment to FSC Principles\* and Criteria\*, are developed and documented.

Indicator 7.1.2. Specific, operational management objectives\* that address the requirements of this standard are defined.

Indicator 7.1.3. *The Organization's\* policies and management objectives\* are publicly available\*.*

**Note:** when meeting this requirement, the stated information may\* be included in the publicly available\* version of the summary of the management plan\*.

**Criterion 7.2.** *The Organization\* shall\* have and implement a management plan\* for the Management Unit\* which is fully consistent with the policies and management objectives\* as established according to Criterion\* 7.1. The management plan\* shall\* describe the natural resources that exist in the Management Unit\* and explain how the plan will meet the FSC certification requirements. The management plan\* shall\* cover forest\* management planning and social management planning proportionate to scale\*, intensity\* and risk\* of the planned activities.*

Indicator 7.2.1. The management plan\* includes specification of:

- 1) Natural resources and environmental values\* defined in Principles\* 6 and 9;
- 2) Social, economic and cultural resources and conditions according to Principles\* 2-5, 6 and 9;
- 3) Social and environmental risks\* relevant for Management Unit\* defined in Criterion\* 4.4 and Annex E.

Indicator 7.2.2. The management plan\* includes documentation (procedures, guidelines, orders, agreements, etc.) with regard to:

- 1) Engagement\* with interested stakeholders\* and affected stakeholders\*, resolution of disputes\* and grievances, as identified in Principles\* 1, 2 and 7;
- 2) Planned management activities and timelines, selection of target species for forest regeneration\*, silvicultural\* methods applied, timber harvesting methods (including logging types) and equipment, as identified in Principle\* 10;
- 3) The rationale for harvesting rates of timber products and their long-term\* sustainability, as identified in Criterion\* 5.2.



Indicator 7.2.3. The *management plan*\* includes measures to *conserve*\* and/or *restore*\*:

- 1) *Rare*\* and *threatened species*\* and their *habitats*\* according to *Criterion*\* 6.4;
- 2) *Water bodies*\* and *riparian zones*\* according to *Criterion*\* 6.7;
- 3) *Landscapes*\* according to *Criterion*\* 6.8;
- 4) *Representative Sample Areas*\* according to *Criterion*\* 6.5;
- 5) 5. *HCV*\* according to *Criterion*\* 9.2.

Indicator 7.2.4. The *management plan*\* includes measures to assess, prevent and *mitigate negative impacts*\* of management activities on:

- 1) *Environmental values*\* according to *Criteria*\* 6.3 and 9.2.
- 2) 2. Social values according to *Principles*\* 2-5, and *Criterion*\* 9.2.

Indicator 7.2.5. The *management plan*\* includes the monitoring program according to *Principle*\* 8, including the assessment of the following:

- 1) Growth, yield and forest production harvesting rates according to *Principle*\* 5;
- 2) *Environmental values*\* according to *Principle*\* 6;
- 3) Management activities *consequences*\* according to *Principles*\* 6 and 10;
- 4) *High Conservation Values*\* according to *Principle*\* 9;
- 5) Monitoring based on *engagement*\* with *interested stakeholders*\* and/or *affected stakeholders*\* according to *Principles*\* 2-5;
- 6) *Ecosystem services*\* according to *Criterion*\* 5.1.

Indicator 7.2.6. The *management plan*\* includes *cartographic material*\*, demonstrating:

- 1) Boundaries of *managed areas*\*;
- 2) Distribution of forest stands among *managed areas*\* by management designation (tselevoye naznachenie) and forest protection status (kategoriya zaschitnosti);
- 3) Stand assignment for harvesting within the *managed areas*\*;
- 4) Planned *forest regeneration*\*, *silvicultural*\*, protection/conservation activities within the *managed areas*\*;
- 5) Location of populated areas that *can*\* be affected by management activities of *The Organization*\*;
- 6) Boundaries of sites with *customary*\* and *legal rights*\* of third parties that use the area within or outside the *Management Unit*\* that *can*\* be affected by *The Organization's*\* management activities.
- 7) 7. Other *cartographic material*\* according to *Indicators*\* 1.2.2, 3.1.2, 4.1.3, 6.4.2, 6.8.1 and 9.1.4, and "HCV Mapping" section of Annex D 1.

Indicator 7.2.7. *The management plan*\* is implemented.

**Criterion 7.3.** *The management plan*\* shall\* include *verifiable targets*\* by which progress towards each of the prescribed *management objectives*\* can be assessed.

Indicator 7.3.1. *Verifiable targets\** are defined to monitor the progress towards each *management objective\**.

**Directive:** among them, predicted characteristics of the condition of a forest area (forest land distributions by age class and dominant tree species) by the termination date of a lease agreement, with a breakdown by forest inventory periods, is to be defined (in case when state forest management units (lesnichestvos) are being certified), by the end of validity date of its respective district-level forest management plan (lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament).

Indicator 7.3.2. *The Organization\** has established the frequency of monitoring of *verifiable targets\** to assess the progress towards the *management objectives\**.

**Criterion 7.4.** *The Organization\* shall\** update and revise periodically the management planning and procedural documentation to incorporate the results of monitoring and evaluation, stakeholder *engagement\** or new scientific and technical information, as well as to respond to changing environmental, social and economic circumstances.

Indicator 7.4.1. The *management plan\** is revised and updated in general at least once every 10 years.

Indicator 7.4.2. Individual elements of the *management plan\** are revised and updated, if necessary:

- 1) Based on the results of the monitoring conducted considering the requirements of *Principle\** 8.
- 2) Based on the results of audits conducted by a certification body.
- 3) Based on the results of *engagement\** with *interested stakeholders\** and *affected stakeholders\**.
- 4) Based on the *Best Available Information\**.
- 5) As a result of changing borders of the *Management Unit\**.
- 6) As a result of changing environmental, social, or economic circumstances.

**Criterion 7.5.** *The Organization\* shall\** make *publicly available\** a summary of the *management plan\** free of charge. Excluding *confidential information\**, other relevant components of the *management plan\** shall\* be made available to *affected stakeholders\** on request, and at cost of reproduction and handling.

Indicator 7.5.1. A summary of the *management plan\** in a format comprehensible to *interested stakeholders\** and *affected stakeholders\** including *cartographic material\** and excluding *confidential information\** is made *publicly available\** at no cost.

Indicator 7.5.2. Components of the *management plan\** that are not made *publicly available\** are available to *interested stakeholders\** and *affected stakeholders\** on request, considering the confidentiality of information. The fee charged by *The Organization\** for delivering the information does not exceed the costs of request processing, reproduction and handling.

**Criterion 7.6.** *The Organization\* shall\**, proportionate to *scale, intensity and risk\** of management activities, proactively and transparently engage *affected stakeholders\** in its management planning and monitoring processes, and shall\* engage *interested stakeholders\** on request.



Indicator 7.6.1. Through *engagement\** with *affected stakeholders\**:

- 1) Relevant representatives and contact persons of *affected stakeholders\** (including where appropriate, local authorities, institutions and organizations) are determined.
- 2) Mutually agreed communication channels allowing for information to flow in both directions are determined.
- 3) All points discussed and all agreements reached are documented.
- 4) *Affected stakeholders\** are familiarized with the protocols, in which all points discussed, decisions taken and agreements reached are registered.

Indicator 7.6.2. *Affected stakeholders\** are provided with an opportunity for *engagement\** with *The Organization\** in monitoring and planning processes of management activities that *can\** affect their interests.

Indicator 7.6.3. On request, *interested stakeholders\** are provided with an opportunity for *engagement\** in monitoring and planning processes of management activities that *can\** affect their interests.

Indicator 7.6.4. The *engagement\** with *affected stakeholders\** in the planning processes is performed at least with regard to the areas of *The Organization's\** *current activity\** with the amount, level of details and periodicity of *engagement\** activities being greater in areas with:

- 1) Higher *intensity\** of *The Organization's\** management activities (amount and duration of activities);
- 2) Where *The Organization's\** management activities *can\** result in significant negative social, environmental and economic *consequences\** for *local communities\** and *Indigenous Peoples\** according to *Indicator\** 4.5.1.

**PRINCIPLE 8: MONITORING AND ASSESSMENT**

*The Organization\* shall\* demonstrate that, progress towards achieving the management objectives\*, the impacts of management activities and the condition of the Management Unit\*, are monitored\* and evaluated proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk\* of management activities, in order to implement adaptive management\*.*

**Note:** *The Organization\* may\* use the monitoring data collected by executive authorities and research organizations, as well as own procedures for collecting information (internal audit procedure, contractor supervision and other).*

**Criterion 8.1.** *The Organization\* shall\* monitor the implementation of its Management Plan\*, including its policies and management objectives\*, its progress with the activities planned, and the achievement of its verifiable targets\*.*

Indicator 8.1.1. Monitoring procedures are developed in which verifiable targets\* are set to assess the implementation of the management plan\*, including conformity with policies, achievement of management objectives\* and verifiable targets\* as specified in Criteria\* 7.1 and 7.3, as well as the frequency of monitoring.

Indicator 8.1.2. Verifiable targets\* are monitored to assess the implementation of the management plan\* according to Indicator\* 8.1.1.

**Criterion 8.2.** *The Organization\* shall\* monitor and evaluate the environmental and social impacts of the activities carried out in the Management Unit\*, and changes in its environmental condition.*

**Note:** *The Organization\* may\* collect monitoring data in a single document or use the available procedures or documents.*

Indicator 8.2.1 *The Organization\* defines the characteristics to be monitored and the frequency of monitoring according to the Indicators\* 8.2.2-8.2.29 (if applicable).*

**A) The Environmental Impact of Management Activities**

Indicator 8.2.2. Information on the volumes of forest regeneration\* activities grouped by individual ways and methods is collected and analyzed according to the requirements in Criterion\* 10.1.

Indicator 8.2.3. Information on the use of ecologically well-adapted species for forest regeneration\* is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of Criterion\* 10.2.

Indicator 8.2.4. Information on negative consequences\* associated with the use of alien species\* within the Management Unit\* is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of Criterion\* 10.3 (if applicable).

Indicator 8.2.5. Information on negative consequences\* of the application of fertilizers\* for environmental values\* is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of Criterion\* 10.6 (if applicable).

Indicator 8.2.6. Information on negative consequences\* of the use of pesticides\* for environmental values\* is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of Criterion\* 10.7 (if applicable).



Indicator 8.2.7. Information on negative <i>consequences*</i> of the use of <i>biological control agents*</i> for <i>environmental values*</i> is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criterion*</i> 10.8 (if applicable).
Indicator 8.2.8. Information on negative <i>consequences*</i> of <i>natural hazards*</i> for <i>environmental values*</i> is collected and analyzed according to the requirements in <i>Criterion*</i> 10.9.
Indicator 8.2.9. Information on negative <i>consequences*</i> of construction, maintenance, utilization of forest roads and forest <i>infrastructure*</i> , <i>forest regeneration*</i> and <i>silviculture*</i> activities for <i>environmental values*</i> is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criterion*</i> 10.10.
Indicator 8.2.10. Information on negative <i>consequences*</i> of harvesting and extraction of timber and/or <i>non-timber forest products*</i> (if applicable) for <i>environmental values*</i> is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criterion*</i> 10.11.
Indicator 8.2.11. Information on negative <i>consequences*</i> of <i>waste management*</i> is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criterion*</i> 10.12.
<b>B) Social Aspects of Management Activities</b>
Indicator 8.2.12. Information on illegal activities is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criterion*</i> 1.4.
Indicator 8.2.13. Information on compliance with law is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criterion*</i> 1.5.
Indicator 8.2.14. Information on resolution of <i>disputes*</i> and grievances is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criteria*</i> 1.6, 2.6 and 4.6.
Indicator 8.2.15. Information on compliance with <i>workers*</i> rights is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criterion*</i> 2.1.
Indicator 8.2.16. Information on occupational health and safety is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criterion*</i> 2.3.
Indicator 8.2.17. Information on <i>workers*</i> training is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criterion*</i> 2.5, as well as of <i>indicators*</i> 1.5.3, 2.1.4, 2.2.2, 2.3.2, 4.2.1, 4.5.3.
Indicator 8.2.18. Information on identification of <i>Indigenous Peoples*</i> and <i>local communities*</i> and their <i>legal*</i> and <i>customary rights*</i> is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criteria*</i> 3.1 and 4.1.
Indicator 8.2.19. Information on identification and <i>protection*</i> of sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance to <i>Indigenous Peoples*</i> and <i>local communities*</i> is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criteria*</i> 9.1-9.3.
Indicator 8.2.20. Information on support to social and economic development of <i>local communities*</i> is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criterion*</i> 4.4.
Indicator 8.2.21. Information on actual compared to <i>sustainable timber harvesting level*</i> for all types of harvesting is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criterion*</i> 5.2.
Indicator 8.2.22. Information on <i>long-term* economic viability*</i> is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criterion*</i> 5.5.



Indicator 8.2.23. Information on maintenance of <i>High Conservation Values</i> * 5 and 6 is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criterion</i> * 9.4.
<b>C) Changes in Environmental Conditions</b>
Indicator 8.2.24. Information on the effectiveness of actions implemented to <i>conserve</i> * <i>rare</i> * and <i>threatened species</i> * and their <i>habitats</i> * is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criterion</i> * 6.4.
Indicator 8.2.25. Information on the effectiveness of actions implemented to <i>conserve</i> * <i>representative sample areas</i> * is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criterion</i> * 6.5.
Indicator 8.2.26. Information on the effectiveness of actions implemented to maintain and/or <i>restore</i> * <i>habitat features</i> * is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Indicators</i> * 6.6.1-6.6.3.
Indicator 8.2.27. Information on the effectiveness of actions implemented to maintain and/or <i>restore</i> * <i>water bodies</i> * is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criterion</i> * 6.7.
Indicator 8.2.28. Information on the effectiveness of actions implemented to maintain and/or <i>restore</i> * <i>landscape values</i> * is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criterion</i> * 6.8.
Indicator 8.2.29. Information on the effectiveness of actions implemented to maintain and/or enhance <i>HCV</i> * 1 to 4 is collected and analyzed according to the requirements of <i>Criterion</i> * 9.4.
<b>Criterion 8.3</b> <i>The Organization</i> * shall analyze the results of monitoring and evaluation and feed the outcomes of this analysis back into the planning process.
Indicator 8.3.1. The annual documented monitoring report is developed, which reflects: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) The extent to which the policies, <i>management objectives</i>* and <i>verifiable targets</i>* (see <i>Criterion</i>* 8.1) were achieved and reasons for the deviations from the set <i>objectives</i>* and <i>verifiable targets</i>*.</li> <li>2) <i>Impacts</i>* of management activities on the environment and social aspects, which <i>can</i>* lead to negative <i>consequences</i>* and causes of such <i>impacts</i>* (see <i>Criterion</i>* 8.2 A, B).</li> <li>3) Changes in environmental conditions, if any, and causes of the identified changes (see <i>Criterion</i>* 8.2, C).</li> <li>4) Proposals for corrective actions to be included in the corresponding elements of the <i>Management Plan</i>* (if necessary).</li> </ol>
Indicator 8.3.2. <i>Adaptive management</i> * is implemented so that monitoring results are considered in <i>The Organization's</i> * management planning and the activities aimed at implementation of the <i>Management Plan</i> *.
Indicator 8.3.3. If monitoring results show non-conformities with the requirements of the FSC Standard, then <i>objectives</i> *, <i>verifiable targets</i> * and/or management activities are revised accordingly.
Indicator 8.3.4. The monitoring program is updated as new sources of information, monitoring methods and monitoring results become available.



**Criterion 8.4.** *The Organization\* shall\* make publicly available\* a summary of the results of monitoring free of charge, excluding confidential information\*.*

Indicator 8.4.1. A summary of monitoring results, excluding *confidential information\**, in a format comprehensible to *interested stakeholders\** and *affected stakeholders\** is made *publicly available\** at no cost.

Indicator 8.4.2. Monitoring results, which are not part of the summary, are provided to *interested stakeholders\** and *affected stakeholders\** upon their request, excluding *confidential information\**.

**Directive:** *The Organization\* may\* charge a fee for providing monitoring results upon request, but not above the costs of copying and delivery.*

**Criterion 8.5.** *The Organization\* shall\* have and implement a tracking and tracing system proportionate to scale, intensity and risk\* of its management activities, for demonstrating the source and volume in proportion to projected output for each year, of all products from the Management Unit\* that are marketed as FSC certified.*

Indicator 8.5.1. A system is implemented to track and trace the flow of all forest products that are marketed as FSC certified.

Indicator 8.5.2. Information about all products sold is compiled and documented, including:

- 1) Common/local and scientific species name;
- 2) Product name or description;
- 3) Volume (or quantity) of product;
- 4) Information to trace the material to the source of origin logging site;
- 5) Logging date/period;
- 6) If processing activities take place in the forest, the date and volume produced; and
- 7) Whether or not the material was sold as FSC certified.

Indicator 8.5.3. Sales invoices or similar documentation are kept for a minimum of five years for all products sold with an FSC claim, which identify at a minimum, the following information:

- 1) Name and address of purchaser;
- 2) The date of sale;
- 3) Common/local and scientific species name;
- 4) Product description;
- 5) The volume (or quantity) sold;
- 6) Certificate code; and
- 7) FSC claim "FSC 100%" identifying products as FSC certified.

**PRINCIPLE 9: HIGH CONSERVATION VALUES\***

*The Organization\* shall\* maintain and/or enhance the High Conservation Values\* in the Management Unit\* through applying the precautionary approach\*.*

**Criterion 9.1.** *The Organization\*, through engagement\* with affected stakeholders\*, interested stakeholders\* and other means and sources, shall\* assess and record the presence and status of the following High Conservation Values\* in the Management Unit\*, proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk\* of impacts of management activities, and likelihood of the occurrence of the High Conservation Values\*:*

**HCV 1** – Species diversity. Concentrations of *biological diversity\** including endemic species, and *rare\**, *threatened\** or endangered species, that are *significant\** at global, regional or national levels.

**HCV 2** – *Landscape\*-level ecosystems\** and mosaics. Intact forest landscapes and large *landscape\*-level ecosystems\** and *ecosystem\** mosaics that are *significant\** at global, regional or national levels, and that contain viable populations of the great majority of the naturally occurring species in natural patterns of distribution and abundance.

**HCV 3** – *Ecosystems\** and *habitats\**. *Rare\**, *threatened\**, or endangered *ecosystems\**, *habitats\** or *refugia\**.

**HCV 4** – *Critical\* ecosystem services\**. Basic *ecosystem services\** in *critical\** situations, including *protection\** of water catchments and control of erosion of vulnerable soils and slopes.

**HCV 5** – Community needs. Sites and resources fundamental for satisfying the basic necessities of *local communities\** or *Indigenous Peoples\** (for livelihoods, health, nutrition, water, etc.), identified through *engagement\** with these communities or *Indigenous Peoples\**.

**HCV 6** – Cultural values. Sites, resources, *habitats\** and *landscapes\** of global or national cultural, archaeological or historical significance, and/or of *critical\** cultural, ecological, economic or religious/sacred importance for the traditional cultures of *local communities\** or *Indigenous Peoples\**, identified through *engagement\** with these *local communities\** or *Indigenous Peoples\**.

Indicator 9.1.1. Within the *managed area\* or areas\**, *HCVs\** Categories 1-6, as defined in *Criterion\* 9.1*, are identified and their condition determined using *Best Available Information\** in accordance with Annex D1 (High Conservation Values).

**Note:** *The Organization\* may\**, if necessary, identify additional (not mentioned in the Annex D1) *HCV\** types and subtypes, if they are important from the standpoint of achieving the *management objectives\**.

Indicator 9.1.2. *HCV\** identification is made through *engagement\** with *interested\** and *affected stakeholders\** in accordance with Annex D1 (“Engagement with affected and interested stakeholders and involvement of experts”).

Indicator 9.1.3. *The Organization\** identified all *HCVs\** prior to implementing any management activities (According to Annex D1, Section on HCV identification).

Indicator 9.1.4. The boundaries of sites containing *HCV\** are shown on *cartographic materials\** according to Annex D1 (Section *HCV\** Mapping) included in the *management plan\**.

**Criterion 9.2.** *The Organization\* shall\* develop effective strategies that maintain and/or enhance the identified High Conservation Values\*, through engagement\* with affected stakeholders\*, interested stakeholders\* and experts.*

Indicator 9.2.1. *The Organization\**, taking into account threats to *HCVs\** and the *precautionary approach\**, developed measures to maintain and/or enhance *HCVs\** within the *Management Unit\** and included them in the *management plan\**.

**Note:** the *precautionary approach\** in relation to *HCV\** management is described in the Annex D1 (*Precautionary approach*).

Indicator 9.2.2. *HCV\* conservation\** measures are developed through *engagement\** with *affected\** and *interested stakeholders\** and experts in accordance with Annex D1 (“Engagement with affected and interested stakeholders, involvement of experts”).

**Directive:** once “strict conservation” management regime is set as *conservation\** measures for the identified *HCV\** (see “HCV Protection Measures in the Strategy for Maintaining HCVs”), *The Organization\** is not obliged to *engage\** with *affected\** and *interested stakeholders\** and experts to develop *conservation\** measures for such areas.

Indicator 9.2.3. *The Organization\** has excluded from management activities no less than 80% of the area of *intact forest landscapes\** within the *Management Unit\** or has undertaken special measures to maintain their *values\** as indicated in Annex D1 (Section 2.1. Intact Forest Landscapes). In the latter case, the share of the area of *intact forest landscapes\** excluded from management activities within the *Management Unit\** can\* be further decreased, but not less than 30%.

**Criterion 9.3.** *The Organization\* shall\* implement strategies and actions that maintain and/or enhance the identified High Conservation Values\*. These strategies and actions shall\* implement the precautionary approach\* and be proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk\* of management activities.*

Indicator 9.3.1. *HCV\* management activities* included in the management plan are implemented and prevent damage to *HCV\**.

Indicator 9.3.2. If the *affected\**, *interested stakeholders\** or experts provide substantiated information proving that *The Organization's\** management activities threaten *HCV\** or the *threat\** for *HCV\** is identified by *The Organization\** based on the analysis of the monitoring results or other information sources, such activities cease immediately until *HCV\* conservation\** measures are developed according to *Indicators\* 9.2.2 and 9.2.3* (including measures on *HCV\* restoration*, if necessary).

Indicator 9.3.3. *The Organization\** observes the legally binding special *protection\** regime for *Protected Nature Areas\** located within the *managed area or areas\** as well as also ensures the *conservation\** of the *values\** for which this *PNA\** was established.



Indicator 9.3.4. *The Organization\**, through *engagement\** with *interested stakeholders\** (first of all with the government bodies in charge of environmental protection and development of *PNA\**, and with necessary involvement of experts and other *interested\** and *affected stakeholders\**) identified and implements activities that ensure *protection\** of the *values\** of *candidate PNA\** in accordance with the proposed boundaries and *conservation\** regimes, aimed to protect those *values\**, which were the reason why it was proposed to establish these *PNAs\**.

**Criterion 9.4.** *The Organization\** shall demonstrate that periodic monitoring is carried out to assess changes in the status of *High Conservation Values\**, and shall adapt its management strategies to ensure their effective *protection\**. The monitoring shall be proportionate to the *scale, intensity and risk\** of management activities, and shall include *engagement\** with *affected stakeholders\**, *interested stakeholders\** and experts.

Indicator 9.4.1. *The Organization\** monitors the condition of the identified *HCVs\**, effectiveness of the measures the *protection\**, assesses the impact of management activities of *The Organization\** and third parties, as well as the appearance of new information on *HCV\** in accordance with the Annex D1 (Sources of information for identifying HCVs).

Indicator 9.4.2. The results of *HCV\** monitoring are used to assess the effectiveness of *HCV\* conservation\** measures and to correct them if necessary.

Indicator 9.4.3. If some *HCV\** were lost or damaged as a result of the *Organization's\** activities, *The Organization\** implements actions aimed to *restore\* HCV\**, or compensates the damage to them by applying stricter *conservation\** measures in areas with other *HCV\** of the appropriate size. These compensatory measures are developed through *engagement\** with *affected stakeholders\**, *interested stakeholders\** and experts.

Indicator 9.4.4. *The Organization\** provides opportunity of *engagement\** in the *HCV\** monitoring program to *affected\** and *interested stakeholders\** and experts upon request.



**PRINCIPLE 10: IMPLEMENTATION OF MANAGEMENT ACTIVITIES**

Management activities conducted by or for *The Organization\** for the *Management Unit\** shall\* be selected and implemented consistent with *The Organization's\** economic, environmental and social policies and *objectives\** and in compliance with the *Principles\** and *Criteria\** collectively.

**Criterion 10.1.** After harvest or in accordance with the *management plan\**, *The Organization\** shall\*, by natural or artificial regeneration methods, regenerate vegetation cover in a timely fashion to pre-harvesting or more *natural conditions\**.

Indicator 10.1.1. *The Organization\** implements *forest regeneration\** activities using target species in consistence with the *management plan\** and within the time periods specified by the law (Forest Regeneration Rules).

Indicator 10.1.2. Thinning of young stands is done in the volume sufficient to achieve *management objectives\** of timely regeneration of target species including not only implementation of plans on *forest regeneration\** and thinning of young stands, but also the quality of these works.

Indicator 10.1.3. *Forest regeneration\** activities ensure regeneration of tree species corresponding to local conditions (regeneration of vegetation to *pre-harvest\** conditions).

**Directive:** low-quality stands of natural origin *may\** be replaced by stands consisting of target species corresponding to local conditions.

Indicator 10.1.4. When implementing *forest regeneration\** activities, *environmental values\**, including *habitat features\** according to *Criteria\** 6.4 and 6.6, are protected.

**Criterion 10.2.** *The Organization\** shall\* use species for regeneration that are ecologically well adapted to the site and to the *management objectives\**. *The Organization\** shall\* use *native species\** and local *genotypes\** for regeneration, unless there is clear and convincing justification for using others.

Indicator 10.2.1. To ensure *forest regeneration\**, *native species\** and local *genotypes\**, as well as species ecologically adapted to a specific site and in accordance with *management objectives\** are used.

**Criterion 10.3.** *The Organization\** shall\* only use *alien species\** when knowledge and/or experience have shown that any invasive impacts can be controlled and effective mitigation measures are in place.

Indicator 10.3.1. *The Organization\** does not use *alien species\** for reforestation, except in city forests with the purpose of urban beautification, for protective afforestation, in plantations of decorative or New Year trees in specially designated nurseries, as well as in cases when there is clear and convincing justification of the need of their use.

Indicator 10.3.2. *Alien species\** are used only when direct experience and / or the results of scientific research demonstrate that invasive impacts *can\** be controlled. (See also Indicator\* 10.2.1).

Indicator 10.3.3. Measures implemented to control *alien species\** used by *The Organization\**, do not allow their spread outside the area in which they are established.

**Directive:** this requirement refers only to control over tree species.



<b>Criterion 10.4</b> <i>The Organization* shall* not use genetically modified organisms* in the Management Unit*.</i>
Indicator 10.4.1. <i>Genetically modified organisms* are not used.</i>
<b>Criterion 10.5</b> <i>The Organization* shall* use silvicultural* practices that are ecologically appropriate for the vegetation, species, sites and management objectives*.</i>
Indicator 10.5.1. <i>When implementing silvicultural* practices, environmental values* are protected according to Criteria* 6.3, 6.4, 6.6–6.8.</i>
<b>Criterion 10.6.</b> <i>The Organization* shall* minimize or avoid the use of fertilizers*. When fertilizers* are used, The Organization* shall* demonstrate that use is equally or more ecologically and economically beneficial than use of silvicultural* systems that do not require fertilizers*, and prevent, mitigate, and/or repair damage to environmental values*, including soils.</i>
Indicator 10.6.1. <i>The use of fertilizers* is permitted only in forest nurseries, as well as for rehabilitation of degraded forest and non-forest lands (quarries and other objects of forest and non-forest infrastructure*).</i>
Indicator 10.6.2. <i>Types, rates, frequencies and sites of application of fertilizers* are documented.</i>
Indicator 10.6.3. <i>When fertilizers* are used, damage caused by their application to environmental values* is prevented or mitigated.</i>
<b>Criterion 10.7</b> <i>The Organization* shall* use integrated pest management and silviculture* systems which avoid, or aim at eliminating, the use of chemical pesticides*. The Organization* shall* not use any chemical pesticides* prohibited by FSC policy. When pesticides* are used, The Organization* shall* prevent, mitigate, and/or repair damage to environmental values* and human health.</i>
Indicator 10.7.1. <i>Integrated pest management (including silvicultural* methods) is used resulting in non-use or minimization in application of pesticides*.</i>
<b>Directive:</b> <i>if application of pesticides* is unavoidable, objective evidence is to be presented to demonstrate that pesticides* application is the only effective, practical and cost effective way to control the pest.</i>
Indicator 10.7.2. <i>The use of pesticides complies with FSC Pesticide Policy FSC-POL-30-001 V3-0.</i>
Indicator 10.7.3. <i>Records of pesticide* usage are maintained, including trade name, active ingredient, quantity of active ingredient used, period of use, location of use and reason for use.</i>
Indicator 10.7.4. <i>The use of pesticides* complies with ILO requirements regarding the transport, storage, handling, application and emergency procedures for cleanup following accidental spillages.</i>
<b>Note:</b> <i>see ILO requirements regarding pesticide* handling: Encyclopaedia of Occupational Health and Safety. Fourth Edition. Volume 3: Chemicals, Industries and Occupations. Safety and health in the use</i>

<p>of agrochemicals: Code of practice, Health and safety in forestry work, an ILO code of practice, International Labour Office Geneva, 2001. National safety requirements for pesticide handling: SanPiN 1.2.2584-10.</p>
<p>Indicator 10.7.5. Application methods for <i>pesticides</i>* minimize quantities used, while achieving effective results, and provide effective protection to surrounding territories.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> it implies that the use of <i>pesticides</i>* ensures appropriate pest control while using the least quantity of <i>pesticides</i>* and safe application methods.</p>
<p>Indicator 10.7.6. <i>The Organization</i>* prevents, mitigates and/or repairs damage to <i>environmental values</i>* and human health from <i>pesticide</i>* use where damage occurs, including by selecting compounds, method, time and pattern of use, which pose the least <i>risk</i>* of harm to humans and non-target species.</p>
<p><b>Criterion 10.8.</b> <i>The Organization</i>* shall* minimize, monitor and strictly control the use of <i>biological control agents</i>* in accordance with <i>internationally accepted scientific protocols</i>*. When <i>biological control agents</i>* are used, <i>The Organization</i>* shall* prevent, mitigate, and/or repair damage to <i>environmental values</i>*.</p>
<p>Indicator 10.8.1. The use of <i>biological control agents</i>* is minimized and controlled.</p>
<p>Indicator 10.8.2. Use of <i>biological control agents</i>* complies with <i>internationally accepted scientific protocols</i>*.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> See FAO Code of Conduct for the Import and Release of Exotic Biological Control.</p>
<p>Indicator 10.8.3. The use of <i>biological control agents</i>* is recorded, including type, quantity, period, location and reason for use.</p>
<p>Indicator 10.8.4. Damage to <i>environmental values</i>* caused by the use of <i>biological control agents</i>* is prevented, mitigated or repaired where damage occurs.</p>
<p><b>Criterion 10.9</b> <i>The Organization</i>* shall* assess <i>risks</i>* and implement activities that reduce potential negative impacts from <i>natural hazards</i>* proportionate to <i>scale, intensity, and risk</i>*.</p>
<p>Indicator 10.9.1. <i>Risks</i>* of possible negative <i>consequences</i>* of <i>natural hazards</i>* (at least such as forest fires, large-scale windfall, mass outbreaks of pests and diseases) on <i>infrastructure</i>*, <i>forest</i>* resources and <i>local communities</i>* in the <i>Management Unit</i>* are assessed.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> <i>The Organization</i>* may* add assessment of the <i>risks</i>* of other <i>natural hazards</i>* typical for the <i>Management Unit</i>*.</p>
<p>Indicator 10.9.2. The <i>risk</i>* for management activities within the <i>Management Unit</i>* to increase the frequency, distribution and severity of negative <i>consequences</i>* of <i>natural hazards</i>* is identified.</p>
<p>Indicator 10.9.3. Measures to reduce the <i>risks</i>* of negative <i>consequences</i>* according to the <i>Indicators</i>* 10.9.1 and 10.9.2 proportionate to <i>scale</i>* of management activities are developed and implemented.</p>

**Criterion 10.10** *The Organization\* shall\* manage infrastructural development\*, transport activities and silviculture\* so that water resources and soils are protected, and disturbance of and damage to rare and threatened species\*, habitats\*, ecosystems\* and landscape values\* are prevented, mitigated and/or repaired.*

Indicator 10.10.1. During construction, maintenance and utilization of forest roads and forest infrastructure\*, implementation of forest regeneration\* and other management practices (lesokhozyaystvennyye raboty), *The Organization\** complies with the requirements on protection\* of water resources, soils, habitats\* of rare\* and threatened species\* and other environmental values\* in part which is not covered by the measures to meet the requirements of the indicators\* of Criteria\* 6.3–6.8.

**Directive:** here management practices include forest tending, fire safety and sanitary activities.

Indicator 10.10.2. When damage to water bodies\*, soils, rare\* and threatened species\*, habitats\*, ecosystems\* and other environmental values\* associated with *The Organization's\** management activities was identified, measures are implemented in timely manner\* to minimize or mitigate the damage by modifying management activities according to adaptive management\* principles.

Indicator 10.10.3. *The Organization\** controls the water quality in the following cases:

- 1) if pesticides\* are applied for treatment of managed area or areas\*;
- 2) if maintenance of the water quality is one of the management objectives\*;
- 3) if there are clear signs of worsening of water quality caused by management activities.

**Directive:** *The Organization\** identifies which water bodies\* require control of water quality based on the material safety data sheet. If pollution of water bodies\* nearby the sites of pesticides\* application was detected, *The Organization\** identifies the polluted area and implements measures to remove pollutants.

**Criterion 10.11.** *The Organization\* shall\* manage activities associated with harvesting and extraction of timber and non-timber forest products\* so that environmental values\* are conserved, merchantable waste is reduced, and damage to other products and services is avoided.*

Indicator 10.11.1. Instructions to protect\* environmental values\* when harvesting and extracting timber and/or non-timber forest products\* are developed and introduced according to the requirements of Criteria\* 6.3, 6.4, 6.6–6.8.

Indicator 10.11.2. Loss of merchantable timber and non-timber forest products\* during harvesting (extraction) is minimized consistent with adaptive management\*.

**Note:** regarding retention of residual trees to protect\* environmental values\* see Indicator\* 10.11.3.

Indicator 10.11.3. After all types of logging habitat features\* are protected at harvest areas according to Indicators\* 6.6.1 and 6.6.2, including wind resistant habitat features\* under condition that their retention does not threaten workers\* safety, does not prevent forest regeneration\* and does not negatively affect forest sanitary condition.



Indicator 10.11.4. If damage to *environmental values\** occurs during timber harvesting and/or harvesting and extraction of *non-timber forest products\**, actions are undertaken to exclude the possibility of such a damage in future.

Indicator 10.11.5. When harvesting timber and extraction of *non-timber forest products\**, damage to conserved *habitat features\** as well as other *environmental values\** is not permitted.

**Criterion 10.12.** *The Organization\* shall\* dispose of waste materials\* in an environmentally appropriate manner.*

Indicator 10.12.1. Disposal of *waste materials\** is done in an environmentally appropriate way.

Indicator 10.12.2. Instructions for disposal of industrial and domestic *waste materials\** are developed and introduced.

Indicator 10.12.3. Industrial and domestic *waste materials\** are disposed in line with instructions developed in accordance with *Indicator\** 10.12.2.

**14. Annexes to a Forest Stewardship Standard**

**Annex A. Minimum list of applicable laws: Russian Internationally-ratified treaties, conventions and agreements and Federation regulations**

*Applicable laws\** include the Constitution of the Russian Federation; statutory regulations (approved by the federal legislative body) – federal laws including codes; by-laws (presidential decrees, government orders, regulations by federal executive bodies, etc.), laws of constituent entities of the Russian Federation, international treaties, conventions and agreements ratified by the Russian Federation. Officially, a precedent does not serve as a source of law in the Russian Federation; that is why the precedent law (judicial legislation) is not included in the *applicable laws\**. The certification assessment does not require full checking of compliance with the regulations stated in the annex, but with the key elements only, which are relevant to meet the requirements under the FSC *Principles\** and *Criteria\*, indicators\** of this standard and *management objectives\** of *The Organization\**.

For assessment all statutory regulations *shall\** be applied in their latest valid version.

Table 1. Minimum list of applicable *laws\** and regulations

Category	Statutory regulation
<b>1. Legal* rights to harvest</b>	
1.1. Land tenure* and management rights	Forest Code of the Russian Federation No.200-FZ as of December 04 2006
Legislation covering land tenure* rights, including customary rights* as well as management rights, that includes the use of legal* methods to obtain tenure* rights and management rights. It also covers legal* registration and tax registration, including relevant legally required licenses	Federal Law No.129-FZ as of August 08 2001 On State Registration of Legal Entities and Individual Entrepreneurs
	Tax Code of the Russian Federation No.146-FZ (part one) as of July 31 1998
	Federal Law No.218-FZ as of July 13 2015 On State Registration of Immovable Property
1.2. Concession licenses	Forest Code of the Russian Federation No.200-FZ as of December 04 2006
Legislation regulating procedures for issuing forest* concession licenses, including the use of legal* methods to obtain concession licenses. Bribery, corruption and nepotism are particularly well-known issues that are connected with concession licenses	Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment of the Russian Federation No.445-FZ as of October 28 2015 On Approval of the Order of Development and Conclusion of the Concession Agreement of a Forest Area Owned by State or Municipality
	Order of the Government of the Russian Federation No.419 as of June 30 2007 On Priority Investment Projects Related to Forest Development
1.3. Management and harvesting planning	Forest Code of the Russian Federation No.200-FZ as of December 04 2006
Any national or sub-national legal* requirements for	Forest Plans of Constituent Entities of the Russian Federation



Category	Statutory regulation
management planning, including conducting <i>forest*</i> inventories, having a <i>forest* management plan*</i> and related planning and monitoring, impact assessments, consultation with other entities, as well as approval of these by <i>legally competent*</i> authorities	District-level forest management plans (lesokhozyaystvennyye reglamente lesnichestv i lesoparkov)
	Order of the Federal Forestry Agency of the Russian Federation (Rosleskhoz) No.69 as of February 29 2012 On Approval of the Content of a Forest Development Project and the Procedure for its Development
	Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment of the Russian Federation No.122 as of March 29 2018 On Approval of Forest Management Instruction
1.4. Harvesting permits  National or sub-national laws and regulations regulating procedures for issuing harvesting permits, licenses or other <i>legal*</i> documents required for specific harvesting operations. This includes the use of <i>legal*</i> methods to obtain the permits. Corruption is a well-known issue that is connected with the issuing of harvesting permits	Forest Code of the Russian Federation No.200-FZ as of December 04 2006
	Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment of the Russian Federation No.17 as of January 16 2015 On Approval of the Form of the Forest Declaration, Its Filling and Submission Procedure, and Requirements to the Digital Format of the Forest Declaration
	Order of the Federal Forestry Agency of the Russian Federation (Rosleskhoz) No.318 as of July 26 2011 On Approval of the Procedure for Development and Conclusion of Forest Stand Sale Agreements for Forests Located on Lands in State or Municipal Ownership and a Sample Form for a Forest Stand Sale Agreement <sup>3</sup>
	Order of the Government of the Russian Federation No.1261 as of November 27 2014 On Approval of Guidelines for Sale of Forest Stands for the Purposes of Timber Production when Procuring Works for Protection, Safeguarding and Regeneration of Forests <sup>4</sup>
<b>2. Taxes and fees</b>	
2.1. Payment of royalties and harvesting fees Legislation covering payment of all legally required <i>forest*</i> harvesting specific fees such as royalties, stumpage fees and other volume-based fees. This includes payments of the fees based on the correct classification of quantities, qualities and species. Incorrect classification of <i>forest*</i> products is a well-known issue that is often combined with bribery of officials in charge of controlling the classification	Forest Code of the Russian Federation No.200-FZ as of December 04 2006
	Order of the Government of the Russian Federation No.310 as of May 22 2007 On Payment Rates for a Forest Resource Volume Unit and Payment Rates for an Area Unit of a Forest Stand in the Federal Ownership

<sup>3</sup> For certification of lesnichestvos only.

<sup>4</sup> For certification of lesnichestvos only.



Category	Statutory regulation
<p>2.2. Value added taxes and other sales taxes</p> <p>Legislation covering different types of sales taxes which apply to the material being sold, including the sale of material as growing <i>forest*</i> (standing stock sales)</p>	<p>Tax Code of the Russian Federation No.117-FZ (part two) as of August 05 2000</p>
<p>2.3. Income and profit taxes</p> <p>Legislation covering income and profit taxes related to profit derived from the sale of <i>forest*</i> products and harvesting activities. This category is also related to income from the sale of timber and does not include other taxes generally applicable for companies and is not related to salary payments</p>	<p>Tax Code of the Russian Federation No.117-FZ (part two) as of August 05 2000</p>
<p><b>3. Timber harvesting activities</b></p>	
<p>3.1. Timber harvesting regulations</p> <p>Any <i>legal*</i> requirements for harvesting techniques and technology including selective cutting, shelter wood regenerations, clear felling, transport of timber from the felling site, seasonal limitations, etc. Typically this includes regulations on the size of felling areas, minimum age and/or diameter for felling activities, and elements that <i>shall*</i> be preserved during felling, etc. Establishment of skidding or hauling trails, road construction, drainage systems and bridges, etc., <i>shall*</i> also be considered as well as the planning and monitoring of harvesting activities. Any legally binding codes for harvesting practices <i>shall*</i> be considered</p>	<p>Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment No.474 as of September 13 2016 On Approval of Wood Harvesting Rules and Peculiarities of Wood Harvesting in Lesnichestvos and Lesoparks Stated in Article 23 of the Forest Code of the Russian Federation</p>
	<p>Order of the Federal Forestry Agency of the Russian Federation (Rosleskhoz) as of June 10 2011 No.223 On Approval of Rules for of Forest Development for Construction, Reconstruction and Use of Linear Facilities</p>
	<p>Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment of the Russian Federation No.626 as of November 22 2017 On Approval of Forest Tending Rules</p>
	<p>Order of the Government of the Russian Federation No.414 as of July 29 2007 On Approval of Rules of Sanitary Safety in Forests</p>
	<p>Order of the Government of the Russian Federation No.417 On Approval of Forest Fire Safety Rules as of June 30 2007 (clauses 8-15, 16-21)</p>
	<p>Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment of the Russian Federation No.375 as of 29.06.2016 On Approval of Forest Regeneration Rules</p>
	<p>Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment of the Russian Federation No.367 as of June 2 2016 On Approval of Types of Timber Harvesting Works, Order and Subsequence of their Implementation, Template of Technological Map of Harvesting Operations, Template of Harvest Area Surveillance Report and Order of Harvest Area Surveillance</p>

Category	Statutory regulation
	<p>Order of the Federal Forestry Agency of the Russian Federation (Rosleskhoz) No.485 as of December 14 2010 On Approval of Features of Usage, Tending, Protection, Reforestation for Forests Located in Water Protection Zone, Forests Performing Functions of Protecting Natural and Other Sites, Valuable Forests, and for Forests Located in Specially Protected Forest Areas</p>
	<p>Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources of the Russian Federation No.181 as of July 16 2007 On Approval of Peculiarities of Use, Tending, Protection, Reforestation for Forests Located in Water Protection Zones, Forests Performing Protection Functions for Natural and Other Objects, Valuable Forests as well as Forests Located in Specially Protected Forest Areas</p>
	<p>District-level forest management plans (lesokhozyaystvennye reglamenti) of lesnichestvos and lesoparks</p>
	<p>Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment of the Russian Federation No.283 as of June 8 2017 On Approval of Peculiarities of Implementation of Prophylactic and Rehabilitative Activities in Zones of Forests subject to Radioactive Pollution</p>
<p>3.2. Protected sites and species  International, <i>national</i>, and sub national treaties, <i>laws*</i>, and regulations related to <i>protected areas*</i>, allowable <i>forest*</i> uses and activities, and/or <i>rare*</i>, <i>threatened</i>, or endangered <i>species*</i>, including their <i>habitats*</i> and potential <i>habitats*</i></p>	<p>Order of the Federal Forestry Agency of the Russian Federation (Rosleskhoz) No.513 as of December 05 2011 On Approval of the List of Tree and Shrub Species for which Timber Harvesting is Not Permitted</p>
	<p>Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources of the Russian Federation No.289 as of October 25 2005 On the Approval of the Lists of Flora Objects Included in the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation and Excluded from the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation (as of June 1 2005)</p>
	<p>Order of the State Committee on Environment Protection of the Russian Federation No.569 as of December 19 1997 On the Approval of the Lists of Fauna Objects Included in the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation and Excluded from the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation</p>
	<p>Lists of <i>rare*</i> and <i>threatened species*</i> included in the Red Data Books of the constituent entities of the Russian Federation approved by relevant executive bodies</p>
	<p>Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment of the Russian Federation No.474 as of September 13 2016 On Approval of Wood Harvesting Rules and Characteristics of Wood Harvesting in Lesnichestvos and Lesoparks Stated in Article 23 of the Forest Code of the Russian Federation</p>
	<p>District-level forest management plans (lesokhozyaystvennye reglamenti) of lesnichestvos and lesoparks</p>

Category	Statutory regulation
	Forest Code of the Russian Federation No.200-FZ as of December 04 2006
	Federal Law No.33-FZ as of March 14 1995 On Protected Nature Areas
	Water Code of the Russian Federation as of June 03 2006 No.74-FZ
	Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources of the Russian Federation No.181 as of July 16 2007 On Approval of Peculiarities of Use, Tending, Protection and Reforestation for Forests Located in Protected Nature Areas
	Order of the Federal Forestry Agency of the Russian Federation (Rosleskhoz) No.485 as of December 14 2010 On Approval of Peculiarities of Use, Tending, Protection, Reforestation for Forests Located in Water Protection Zones, Forests Performing Protection Functions for Natural and Other Objects, Valuable Forests and for Forests Located in Specially Protected Forest Areas
	Federal Law No.52-FZ as of April 24 1995 On Wildlife
	Order of the Government of the Russian Federation No.158 as of February 19 1996 On Approval of the Administrative Procedure of the Federal Service for the Supervision in the Area of Use of Natural Resources on Implementing the State Function of Issuance of Hunting and Harvesting Permits with Regard to Flora and Fauna Listed in the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation
	Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment of the Russian Federation No.264 as of May 29 2017 On Approval of Peculiarities of Protection in Forest of Rare and Endangered Trees, Shrubs, Lianas and Other Forest Plants Listed in the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation or Red Data Books of Constituent Entities of the Russian Federation
	Convention on Biological Diversity (adopted in Rio de Janeiro as of May 22 1992)
	Convention on the Wetlands of International Importance Especially as Wildlife Habitat (adopted in Ramsar as of February 02 1971) (The Protocol signed in Paris as of December 03 1982)
	Convention for the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage (adopted in Paris as of November 16 1972)
3.3. Environmental requirements	Federal Law No.7-FZ as of January 10 2002 On Environmental Protection
National and sub national laws and regulations related to the identification and/or <i>protection</i> *	Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment of the Russian Federation No.474 as of September 13 2016 On Approval of the Rules for Timber Harvesting and Peculiarities of Timber Harvesting in



Category	Statutory regulation
of <i>environmental values</i> * including but not limited to those relating to or affected by harvesting, acceptable levels for soil damage, establishment of buffer zones (e.g., along water courses, open areas and breeding sites), maintenance of retention trees on the felling site, seasonal limitations of harvesting time, environmental requirements for <i>forest</i> * machineries, use of <i>pesticides</i> * and other <i>chemicals</i> *, biodiversity <i>conservation</i> *, air quality, <i>protection</i> * and <i>restoration</i> * of water quality, operation of recreational equipment, development of non-forestry <i>infrastructure</i> *, mineral exploration and extraction, etc.	Lesnichestvos and Lesoparks stated in Article 23 of the Forest Code of the Russian Federation
	Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment of the Russian Federation No.367 as of May 27 2016 On Approval of Types of Timber Harvesting Works, Order and Subsequence of their Implementation, Template of Technological Map of Harvesting Operations, Template of Harvest Area Surveillance Report and Order of Harvest Area Surveillance
	Federal Law No.96-FZ as of May 04 1999 On Atmospheric Air Protection
	Federal Law No.89-FZ as of June 24 1998 On Production and Consumption Waste
	Order of the Government of the Russian Federation No.414 as of June 29 2007 On Approval of Rules of Sanitary Safety in Forests
	Law of the Russian Federation No. 2395-1 as of February 21 1992 On Subsoil
	Order of the Federal Forestry Agency of the Russian Federation (Rosleskhoz) No.1 as of January 10 2012 On Approval of Afforestation Rules
	Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment of the Russian Federation No.375 as of June 29 2016 On Approval of Reforestation Rules
	Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources of the Russian Federation No.185 as of July 16 2007 On Approval of Forest Tending Rules
	Federal Law No.109-FZ as of July 19 1997 On Safe Handling of Pesticides and Agricultural Chemicals
	Order of the Government of the Russian Federation No.417 as of June 30 2007 On Approval of Forest Fire Safety Rules
	Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment of the Russian Federation No.283 as of June 8 2017 On Approval of Peculiarities of Implementation of Prophylactic and Rehabilitative Activities in Zones of Forests subject to Radioactive Pollution
	District-level forest management plans (lesokhozyaystvennyye reglamenti) of lesnichestvos and lesoparks
Russian Federal Law # 7-FZ dated 10.01.2002 (version as of 24.11.2014, amended 29.12.2014) On Environmental Protection (amended and supplemented, effective as of 01.01.2015)	
3.4. Health and safety	Labor Code of the Russian Federation No. 197-FZ of 30 December 2001
Legally required personal protection equipment for	Order of the Ministry of Labour and Social Protection of the Russian Federation No.835n as of November 02 2015

Category	Statutory regulation
<p>persons involved in harvesting activities, implementation of safe felling and transport practices, establishment of <i>protection*</i> zones around harvesting sites, safety requirements for machinery used, and legally required safety requirements in relation to <i>chemical*</i> usage. The health and safety requirements that <i>shall*</i> be considered relevant to operations in the <i>forest*</i> (not office work, or other activities less related to actual <i>forest*</i> operations)</p>	<p>On Approval of Labor Protection Rules in Timber Harvesting, Woodworking and Forestry Operations</p>
	<p>Order of Federal Forestry Agency (Rosleskhoz) of the Russian Federation No. 213 as of December 23 1998 On Adopting Standard Instructions for Workplace Safety for Main Professions and Job Types in Forest Management</p>
	<p>ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work (Table 1 from the Code of Practice is given in Table 2 of the Annex)</p>
	<p>Law No.125-FZ On Compulsory Social Insurance against Industrial Accidents and Occupational Diseases as of 24.07.1998</p>
<p>3.5. <i>Legal*</i> employment</p> <p><i>Legal*</i> requirements for employment of personnel involved in harvesting activities including requirements for contracts and working permits, requirements for obligatory insurance, requirements for competence certificates and other training requirements, and payment of social and income taxes withheld by the employer. Also covered are the observance of minimum working age and minimum age for personnel involved in hazardous work, legislation against forced and compulsory labor, and discrimination and freedom of association</p>	<p>Labor Code of the Russian Federation No. 197-FZ as of December 30 2001 (articles 3-4)</p>
	<p>Federal Law No.212-FZ as of July 24 2009 On Insurance Contributions to the Pension Fund of the Russian Federation, to the Social Insurance Fund of the Russian Federation and to the Federal Fund for the Obligatory Medical Insurance</p>
	<p>Forest Sector Agreement of the Russian Federation for 2018-2020 (approved by the All-Russia Industrial Union of Employers “Russian Union of Timber Industrialists and Timber Exporters” and Public Organization <i>Forest Industries Workers’ Professional Union</i> of the Russian Federation)</p>
	<p>Forest Sector Organizations Agreement for 2018-2020 (approved by the Public Organization <i>Forest Industries Workers’ Professional Union of the Russian Federation</i> and All-Russia Industrial Union of Pulp and Paper Companies and All-Russia Industrial Union of Furniture Manufacturers and Wood Processing Companies on December 27 2017)</p>
	<p>Federal Law No.5242-1 as of June 25 1993 On the Right of Citizens of the Russian Federation to Freedom of Movement, Choice of Place of Stay and Residence within the Russian Federation</p>
	<p>Federal Law No.115-FZ as of July 25 2002 On the Legal Status of Foreign Citizens in the Russian Federation</p>
	<p>Federal Law No.62 as of May 31 2002 On the Citizenship of the Russian Federation</p>
<p>3.6. ILO Conventions</p>	<p>ILO 29: Convention concerning Forced or Compulsory Labour (1930) (USSR was a member since 1956);          ILO 87: Convention concerning Freedom of Association and Protection of the Right to Organise (1948) (member since 1956);          ILO 98: Convention concerning the Application of the Principles of the Right to Organise and to Bargain Collectively (1949) (member since 1956);</p>



Category	Statutory regulation
	<p>ILO 100: Equal Remuneration Convention (1951) (member since 1956);            ILO 105: Abolition of Forced Labour Convention (1957) (member since 1998);            ILO 111: Discrimination (Employment and Occupation) Convention (1958) (member since 1961);            ILO 138: Minimum Age Convention (1973) (member since 1979) (minimum age set to be 16);            ILO 142: Human Resources Development Convention (1975) (member since c 1979);            ILO 155: Occupational Safety and Health Convention (1981) (member since 1998);            ILO 182: Worst Forms of Child Labour Convention (1999) (member since 2003)</p>
<b>4. Third parties' rights</b>	
<p>4.1. <i>Customary rights*</i></p> <p>Legislation covering <i>customary rights*</i> relevant to <i>forest*</i> harvesting activities, including requirements covering the sharing of benefits and indigenous rights</p>	
<p>4.2. <i>Free Prior and Informed Consent*</i></p> <p>Legislation covering "free prior and informed consent" in connection with the transfer of <i>forest*</i> management rights and <i>customary rights*</i> to <i>The Organization*</i> in charge of the harvesting operation</p>	
<p>4.3. <i>Indigenous Peoples**</i> rights</p> <p>Legislation that regulates the rights of <i>Indigenous Peoples*</i> as far as it is related to forestry activities. Possible aspects to consider are land <i>tenure*</i>, and rights to use certain <i>forest*</i> related resources and practice traditional activities, which may involve <i>forest*</i> lands</p>	<p>ILO 169: The Indigenous and Tribal Peoples Convention (1989) (not ratified)</p> <p>Federal Law No. 82-FZ as of April 30 1999 On Guarantees of Indigenous small-numbered Nations Rights in the Russian Federation</p> <p>Federal Law No.49-FZ as of May 07 2001 On Territories of Traditional Nature Use by Indigenous small-numbered Nations of the Russian North, Siberia and the Russian Far East</p>
<b>5. Trade and transport</b>	
<p>5.1. Classification of species, quantities, qualities</p> <p>Legislation regulating how harvested material is classified in terms of species, volumes and qualities in connection with trade and transport. Incorrect classification of harvested</p>	<p>Forest Code of the Russian Federation No.200-FZ as of December 04 2006</p> <p>Order of the Government of the Russian Federation No.1525 as of December 26 2014 On Approval of Wood Accounting Rules</p> <p>Order of the Federal Agency for Technical Regulation and Metrology (Rosstandart) No.14-st as of January 31 2014 On Adoption and Enactment of the Russian Standard</p>



Category	Statutory regulation
material is a well-known method to reduce or avoid payment of legally prescribed taxes and fees	Industrial Classification of Economic Activities (OKVED2) OK 029-2014 (NACE ver. 2) and Russian National Classification of Products (OKPD2) OK 034-2014 (CPC 2008)
	Order of the Government of the Russian Federation No.1161 as of November 04 2014 On Approval of Procedure for Labeling Valuable Wood Species (Oak, Beech, Ash)
5.2. Trade and transport  All required trading and transport permits <i>shall</i> * exist as well as legally required transport documents which accompany the transport of wood from <i>forest</i> * operations	Forest Code of the Russian Federation No.200-FZ as of December 04 2006
	Civil Code of the Russian Federation No. 14-FZ (part two) as of January 26 1996
	Order of the Ministry of Railways of the Russian Federation No.39 as of June 18 2003 On Approval of Guidelines to Fill in Transportation Documents for Railway Transportation of Goods
	Order of the Government of the Russian Federation No.272 as of April 15 2011 On Approval of Automobile Transportation Rules
	Merchant Shipping Code of the Russian Federation No.81-FZ as of April 30 1999
	Order of the Government of the Russian Federation No.1161 On Approval of Procedure for Labeling Valuable Wood Species (Oak, Beech, Ash) as of November 04 2014
	Order of the Government of the Russian Federation No.571 On Accompanying Document for Transportation of Timber as of June 21 2014
	Order of the Government of the Russian Federation No.11 On Approval of Rules for Submission of Declarations on Transactions with timber as of January 06 2015
5.3. Offshore trading and transfer pricing Legislation regulating offshore trading.	
5.4. Custom regulations  Custom legislation covering areas such as export/import licenses and product classification (codes, quantities, qualities and species)	Resolution of the Customs Union Committee No.257 as of May 20 2010 On the Procedure for Filling the Customs Declarations and Customs Declaration Forms (jointly with the Guidelines on for Filling the Declarations for the Goods)
	Federal Law No.311-FZ as of November 27 2010 On Customs Regulation in the Russian Federation
	Resolution of the Eurasian Economic Commission Council No.54 as of July 16 2012 On Approval of the Single Commodity Nomenclature of Foreign Economic Activity of the Customs Union and the Common Customs Tariff of the Customs Union

Category	Statutory regulation
	Order of the Government of the Russian Federation No.779 as of July 30 2012 On Tariff Quotas for Selected Softwood Timber Categories Exported from the Russian Federation and Member States of the Customs Union Agreement
<p>5.5. CITES</p> <p>CITES permits (the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora, also known as the Washington Convention)</p>	<p>Convention on the International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (jointly with the List of mammals, birds, reptiles, amphibians, fish, invertebrates, and plants whose export, re-export, and import ...) (adopted in Washington as of March 03 1973)</p> <p>List of animal and plant species under the Convention on the International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES) (approved by Rosprirodnadzor) effective since June 12 2013</p> <p>Order of the Government of the Russian Federation No.337 as of May 04 2008 On Measures to Ensure the Fulfillment of Responsibilities of the Russian Federation Resulting from the CITES Convention as of March 1973, regarding Species of Wild Flora and Fauna that are Threatened, except for Sturgeon Species of Fish</p> <p>Order of the Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment of the Russian Federation No.297 as of June 30 2015 On Approval of the Administrative Procedure for the Federal Service for Supervision in Area of the Use of Natural Resources to Provide the State Service on Issuance of Permits for Export from the Russian Federation and Import to the Russian Federation of Threatened Wild Species of Flora and Fauna , their Parts and Derivates subject to CITES Convention as of March 31973, except for sturgeon species of fish and their products, including caviar</p>
<b>6. Due diligence / due care</b>	
<p>6. Due diligence / due care procedures</p> <p>Legislation requiring due diligence/due care procedures, including, e.g., due diligence/due care systems, declaration obligations, and/or the keeping of trade related documents, etc</p>	
<b>7. Ecosystem Services</b>	
<p>7. Ecosystem Services</p> <p>Legislation covering <i>ecosystem services*</i> rights, including <i>customary rights*</i> as well as management rights that include the use of <i>legal*</i> methods to make claims and obtain</p>	<p>Order of the Federal Forestry Agency of the Russian Federation No.512 as of December 05 2011 Rules for Harvesting and Collection of Non-Timber Forest Resources</p> <p>Federal Law No.209-FZ as of July 24 2009 On Hunting and Conservation of Hunting Resources and Amendment of Certain Legal Acts of the Russian Federation</p>



Category	Statutory regulation
<p>benefits and management rights related to <i>ecosystem services</i>*. National and subnational laws and regulations related to the identification, protection and payment for <i>ecosystem services</i>*. Also includes <i>legal business registration</i>* and tax registration, including relevant <i>legal</i>* required licenses for the exploitation, payment, and claims related to <i>ecosystem services</i>* (including tourism)</p>	<p>Federal Law No.166-FZ as of December 20 2004 On Fishing and Conservation of Aquatic Biological Resources</p> <p>Forest Code of the Russian Federation No.200-FZ as of December 04 2006</p>

Table 2. Personal protective equipment (PPE) required when implementing *forest\** operations

Parts of the body to be protected:	Feet	Legs	Trunk, arms, legs	Hands	Head	Eyes	Eyes/fac e	Hearin g
PPE normally appropriate:	Safety boots or shoes <sup>1</sup>	Safety trousers <sup>2</sup>	Close-fitting clothing	Gloves	Safety helmet	Goggles	Visor (mesh)	Ear muffs
<b>Operation</b>								
Planting <sup>4</sup>								
Manual	✓			✓ <sup>5</sup>				
Mechanized	✓		✓					✓ <sup>6</sup>
<i>Weeding/cleaning</i>								
Smooth-edged tools	✓			✓		✓		
Handsaw	✓			✓				
Chain-saw	✓ <sup>7</sup>	✓	✓	✓ <sup>8</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓
Brush saw								
- with metal blade	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
- with nylon filament	✓	✓		✓		✓		✓
Rotating knife/flail	✓		✓	✓				✓ <sup>6</sup>
<i>Pesticide application</i>	To comply with those specified for the particular substance and application technique							
<i>Pruning*</i>								
Hand tools	✓			✓	✓ <sup>10</sup>	✓		
<i>Felling</i> <sup>11</sup>								
Hand tools	✓		✓	✓ <sup>12</sup>	✓			
Chain-saw	✓ <sup>7</sup>	✓	✓	✓ <sup>8</sup>	✓		✓	✓
Mechanized	✓		✓		✓			✓
<i>Debarking</i>								
Manual	✓			✓				

Parts of the body to be protected:	Feet	Legs	Trunk, arms, legs	Hands	Head	Eyes	Eyes/face	Hearing
PPE normally appropriate:	Safety boots or shoes <sup>1</sup>	Safety trousers <sup>2</sup>	Close-fitting clothing	Gloves	Safety helmet	Goggles	Visor (mesh)	Ear muffs
<b>Operation</b>								
Mechanized	✓		✓	✓		✓		✓ <sup>6</sup>
<i>Splitting</i>								
Manual	✓			✓		✓		
Mechanized	✓		✓	✓		✓		✓
<i>Extraction</i>								
Manual	✓			✓	✓ <sup>13</sup>			
Chute	✓			✓	✓ <sup>13</sup>			
Animal	✓			✓	✓ <sup>13</sup>			
Mechanized								
- skidder	✓		✓	✓ <sup>14</sup>	✓			✓ <sup>6</sup>
- forwarder	✓		✓		✓			✓ <sup>6</sup>
- cable crane	✓		✓	✓ <sup>14</sup>	✓			✓ <sup>6</sup>
- helicopter	✓		✓ <sup>15</sup>	✓ <sup>14</sup>	✓ <sup>16</sup>	✓		✓
<i>Stacking/loading</i>	✓		✓	✓	✓			✓ <sup>6</sup>
<i>Chipping</i>	✓		✓	✓	✓		✓	✓ <sup>6</sup>
<i>Tree climbing<sup>17</sup></i>								
Using a chain-saw	✓ <sup>7</sup>	✓	✓	✓ <sup>8</sup>	✓ <sup>18</sup>	✓		✓
Not using a chain-saw	✓				✓			

Notes:

\* If pruning involves tree climbing above 3 m, a fall restricting device should be used.

<sup>1</sup>With integrated steel toe for medium or heavy loads.

<sup>2</sup>Safety trousers incorporating clogging material, in hot climates/weather chain-saw leggings or chaps maybe used. Safety trousers and chap contain fibres that are inflammable and melt, and should not be worn during fire-fighting.

<sup>3</sup>Ear plugs and ear valves not generally suitable for forestry because of risk of infection.



<sup>4</sup>For planting of chemically treated plants and for dipping of plants in chemicals see relevant section of Chapter 13. of the Code ILO

<sup>5</sup>When planting spiny seedlings or chemically treated plants.

<sup>6</sup>When noise level at work position exceeds 85dB (A).

<sup>7</sup>Chain-saw boots with protective guarding at front vamp and instep.

<sup>8</sup>Cut-resistant material incorporated in the back of the left hand.

<sup>9</sup>When falling branches are likely to cause injury.

<sup>10</sup>When pruning to a height exceeding 2.5 m.

<sup>11</sup>Felling includes debranching and crosscutting.

<sup>12</sup>When using a handsaw.

<sup>13</sup>When extracting near unstable trees or branchwood.

<sup>14</sup>Only if manipulating logs; gloves with heavy-duty palm if handling wire choker rope or tether line.

<sup>15</sup>Highly visible colours.

<sup>16</sup>With chin strap.

<sup>17</sup>For required treeclimbing equipment see Chapter 15 of the Code ILO.

<sup>18</sup>Climbing helmets are preferable: if they are not available, safety helmets with chin straps may be used.

Source: Draft *Code of practice on safety and health in forest work* (Geneva, ILO, 1997), p. 24.



## **Annex B1. Applicable Articles of the United Nations Declaration of the Rights of Indigenous Peoples and ILO Convention 169**

### **Applicable articles of the United Nations Declaration of the Rights of Indigenous Peoples (2007)**

**Article 1:** Indigenous peoples have the right to the full enjoyment, as a collective or as individuals, of all human rights and fundamental freedoms as recognized in the Charter of the United Nations, the Universal Declaration of Human Rights and international human rights law.

**Article 2:** Indigenous peoples and individuals are free and equal to all other peoples and individuals and have the right to be free from any kind of discrimination, in the exercise of their rights, in particular that based on their indigenous origin or identity.

**Article 3.** Indigenous peoples have the right to self-determination. By virtue of that right they freely determine their political status and freely pursue their economic, social and cultural development.

**Article 4:** Indigenous peoples, in exercising their right to self-determination, have the right to autonomy or self-government in matters relating to their internal and local affairs, as well as ways and means for financing their autonomous functions.

**Article 5:** Indigenous peoples have the right to maintain and strengthen their distinct political, legal, economic, social and cultural institutions, while retaining their right to participate fully, if they so choose, in the political, economic, social and cultural life of the State.

**Article 7:** (1) Indigenous individuals have the rights to life, physical and mental integrity, liberty and security of person. (2) Indigenous peoples have the collective right to live in freedom, peace and security as distinct peoples and shall not be subjected to any act of genocide or any other act of violence, including forcibly removing children of the group to another group.

**Article 8:** (1) Indigenous peoples and individuals have the right not to be subjected to forced assimilation or destruction of their culture.

**Article 9:** Indigenous peoples and individuals have the right to belong to an indigenous community or nation, in accordance with the traditions and customs of the community or nation concerned. No discrimination of any kind *may\** arise from the exercise of such a right.

**Article 10:** Indigenous peoples shall not be forcibly removed from their lands or territories. No relocation shall take place without the free, prior and informed consent of the indigenous peoples concerned and after agreement on just and fair compensation and, where possible, with the option of return.

**Article 11:** 1. Indigenous peoples have the right to practice and revitalize their cultural traditions and customs. This includes the right to maintain, protect and develop the past, present and future manifestations of their cultures, such as archaeological and historical sites, artefacts, designs, ceremonies, technologies and visual and performing arts and literature.

**Article 12:** 1. Indigenous peoples have the right to manifest, practice, develop and teach their spiritual and religious traditions, customs and ceremonies; the right to maintain, protect, and have access in privacy to their religious and cultural sites; the right to the use and control of their ceremonial objects; and the right to the repatriation of their human remains.

**Article 17:** 1. Indigenous individuals and peoples have the right to enjoy fully all rights established under applicable international and domestic labour law. 3. Indigenous individuals have the right not to be subjected to any discriminatory conditions of labour and, inter alia, employment or salary.

**Article 18:** Indigenous peoples have the right to participate in decision-making in matters which would affect their rights, through representatives chosen by themselves in accordance with their own procedures, as well as to maintain and develop their own indigenous decision-making institutions.



**Article 20:** 1. Indigenous peoples have the right to maintain and develop their political, economic and social systems or institutions, to be secure in the enjoyment of their own means of subsistence and development, and to engage freely in all their traditional and other economic activities. 2. Indigenous peoples deprived of their means of subsistence and development are entitled to just and fair redress.

**Article 21:** 1. Indigenous peoples have the right, without discrimination, to the improvement of their economic and social conditions, including, inter alia, in the areas of education, employment, vocational training and retraining, housing, sanitation, health and social security.

**Article 23:** Indigenous peoples have the right to determine and develop priorities and strategies for exercising their right to development. In particular, indigenous peoples have the right to be actively involved in developing and determining health, housing and other economic and social programmes affecting them and, as far as possible, to administer such programmes through their own institutions.

**Article 24:** 1. Indigenous peoples have the right to their traditional medicines and to maintain their health practices, including the conservation of their vital medicinal plants, animals and minerals. Indigenous individuals also have the right to access, without any discrimination, to all social and health services.

**Article 25:** Indigenous peoples have the right to maintain and strengthen their distinctive spiritual relationship with their traditionally owned or otherwise occupied and used lands, territories, waters and coastal seas and other resources and to uphold their responsibilities to future generations in this regard.

**Article 26:** 1. Indigenous peoples have the right to the lands, territories and resources which they have traditionally owned, occupied or otherwise used or acquired. 2. Indigenous peoples have the right to own, use, develop and control the lands, territories and resources that they possess by reason of traditional ownership or other traditional occupation or use, as well as those which they have otherwise acquired.

**Article 28:** 1. Indigenous peoples have the right to redress, by means that can include restitution or, when this is not possible, just, fair and equitable compensation, for the lands, territories and resources which they have traditionally owned or otherwise occupied or used, and which have been confiscated, taken, occupied, used or damaged without their free, prior and informed consent. 2. Unless otherwise freely agreed upon by the peoples concerned, compensation shall take the form of lands, territories and resources equal in quality, size and legal status or of monetary compensation or other appropriate redress.

**Article 29:** 1. Indigenous peoples have the right to the conservation and protection of the environment and the productive capacity of their lands or territories and resources. States shall establish and implement assistance programmes for indigenous peoples for such conservation and protection, without discrimination.

**Article 31:** 1. Indigenous peoples have the right to maintain, control, protect and develop their cultural heritage, traditional knowledge and traditional cultural expressions, as well as the manifestations of their sciences, technologies and cultures, including human and genetic resources, seeds, medicines, knowledge of the properties of fauna and flora, oral traditions, literatures, designs, sports and traditional games and visual and performing arts. They also have the right to maintain, control, protect and develop their intellectual property over such cultural heritage, traditional knowledge, and traditional cultural expressions.

**Article 32:** 1. Indigenous peoples have the right to determine and develop priorities and strategies for the development or use of their lands or territories and other resources.

**Article 34:** Indigenous peoples have the right to promote, develop and maintain their institutional structures and their distinctive customs, spirituality, traditions, procedures, practices and, in the cases where they exist, juridical systems or customs, in accordance with international human rights standards.

**Article 40:** Indigenous peoples have the right to access to and prompt decision through just and fair procedures for the resolution of conflicts and disputes with States or other parties, as well as to effective remedies for all infringements of their individual and collective rights. Such



a decision shall give due consideration to the customs, traditions, rules and legal systems of the indigenous peoples concerned and international human rights.

**Applicable articles of ILO Convention 169 (1989)**

**Article 1:** 1. This Convention applies to:

- a) tribal peoples in independent countries whose social, cultural and economic conditions distinguish them from other sections of the national community, and whose status is regulated wholly or partially by their own customs or traditions or by special laws or regulations;
- b) peoples in independent countries who are regarded as indigenous on account of their descent from the populations which inhabited the country, or a geographical region to which the country belongs, at the time of conquest or colonization or the establishment of present state boundaries and who, irrespective of their legal status, retain some or all of their own social, economic, cultural and political institutions.

2. Self-identification as indigenous or tribal shall be regarded as a fundamental criterion for determining the groups to which the provisions of this Convention apply.

**Article 3:** 1. Indigenous and tribal peoples shall enjoy the full measure of human rights and fundamental freedoms without hindrance or discrimination. The provisions of the Convention shall be applied without discrimination to male and female members of these peoples.

2. No form of force or coercion shall be used in violation of the human rights and fundamental freedoms of the peoples concerned, including the rights contained in this Convention.

**Article 4:** 1. Special measures shall be adopted as appropriate for safeguarding the persons, institutions, property, labour, cultures and environment of the peoples concerned.

2. Such special measures shall not be contrary to the freely-expressed wishes of the peoples concerned.

**Article 5:** In applying the provisions of this Convention:

- a) the social, cultural, religious and spiritual values and practices of these peoples shall be recognised and protected, and due account shall be taken of the nature of the problems which face them both as groups and as individuals;
- b) the integrity of the values, practices and institutions of these peoples shall be respected;
- c) policies aimed at mitigating the difficulties experienced by these peoples in facing new conditions of life and work shall be adopted, with the participation and co-operation of the peoples affected.

**Article 7:** 1. The peoples concerned shall have the right to decide their own priorities for the process of development as it affects their lives, beliefs, institutions and spiritual well-being and the lands they occupy or otherwise use, and to exercise control, to the extent possible, over their own economic, social and cultural development. In addition, they shall participate in the formulation, implementation and evaluation of plans and programmes for national and regional development which *can*\* affect them directly.

**Article 8:** 1. In applying national laws and regulations to the peoples concerned, due regard shall be had to their customs or *customary law*\*.

**Article 14:** 1. The rights of ownership and possession of the peoples concerned over the lands which they traditionally occupy shall be recognised. In addition, measures shall be taken in appropriate cases to safeguard the right of the peoples concerned to use lands not exclusively occupied by them, but to which they have traditionally had access for their subsistence and traditional activities. Particular attention shall be paid to the situation of nomadic peoples and shifting cultivators in this respect.

**Article 15:** 1. The rights of the peoples concerned to the natural resources pertaining to their lands shall be specially safeguarded. These rights include the right of these peoples to participate in the use, management and conservation of these resources.

**Article 16:** 1. Subject to the following paragraphs of this Article, the peoples concerned shall not be removed from the lands which they occupy.



2. Where the relocation of these peoples is considered necessary as an exceptional measure, such relocation shall take place only with their free and informed consent. Where their consent cannot be obtained, such relocation shall take place only following appropriate procedures established by national laws and regulations, including public inquiries where appropriate, which provide the opportunity for effective representation of the peoples concerned.

3. Whenever possible, these peoples shall have the right to return to their traditional lands, as soon as the grounds for relocation cease to exist.

4. When such return is not possible, as determined by agreement or, in the absence of such agreement, through appropriate procedures, these peoples shall be provided in all possible cases with lands of quality and legal status at least equal to that of the lands previously occupied by them, suitable to provide for their present needs and future development. Where the peoples concerned express a preference for compensation in money or in kind, they shall be so compensated under appropriate guarantees.

5. Persons thus relocated shall be fully compensated for any resulting loss or injury.

**Article 17:** 1. Procedures established by the peoples concerned for the transmission of land rights among members of these peoples shall be respected.

2. The peoples concerned shall be consulted whenever consideration is being given to their capacity to alienate their lands or otherwise transmit their rights outside their own community.

3. Persons not belonging to these peoples shall be prevented from taking advantage of their customs or of lack of understanding of the laws on the part of their members to secure the ownership, possession or use of land belonging to them.

**Article 20:** 2. Governments shall do everything possible to prevent any discrimination between *workers\** belonging to the peoples concerned and other *workers\**, in particular as regards:

a) admission to employment, including skilled employment, as well as measures for promotion and advancement;

b) equal remuneration for work of equal value;

c) medical and social assistance, occupational safety and health, all social security benefits and any other occupationally related benefits, and housing;

d) the right of association and freedom for all lawful trade union activities, and the right to conclude collective agreements with employers or employers' organisations.

3. The measures taken shall include measures to ensure:

a) that workers belonging to the peoples concerned, including seasonal, casual and migrant workers in agricultural and other employment, as well as those employed by labour contractors, enjoy the protection afforded by national law and practice to other such workers in the same sectors, and that they are fully informed of their rights under labour legislation and of the means of redress available to them;

b) that workers belonging to these peoples are not subjected to working conditions hazardous to their health, in particular through exposure to pesticides or other toxic substances;

c) that workers belonging to these peoples are not subjected to coercive recruitment systems, including bonded labour and other forms of debt servitude;

d) that workers belonging to these peoples enjoy equal opportunities and equal treatment in employment for men and women, and protection from sexual harassment.

**Article 21:** Members of the peoples concerned shall enjoy opportunities at least equal to those of other citizens in respect of vocational training measures.

**Article 23:** 1. Handicrafts, rural and community-based industries, and subsistence economy and traditional activities of the peoples concerned, such as hunting, fishing, trapping and gathering, shall be recognised as important factors in the maintenance of their cultures and in their economic self-reliance and development. Governments shall, with the participation of these people and whenever appropriate, ensure that these activities are strengthened and promoted.



## Annex B2 (new). Indigenous Peoples

In Russian Federation, for the purpose of this standard, communities of people from the following list *may*\* refer to *Indigenous Peoples*\*:

1) *Indigenous Peoples*\* according to the law of the Russian Federation. In legislation there is only the notion of indigenous small-numbered peoples. According to Federal Law No. 82-FZ of April 30 1999 'On Guarantees of the Rights of Indigenous Small-numbered Peoples of the Russian Federation', indigenous small-numbered peoples of Russia are peoples living in territories of traditional ancestral settlements, preserving traditional livelihoods, activities and crafts, having a population of less than 50 thousand people and self-recognizing themselves as individual ethnic communities. Russian Government Decree No. 255 of March 24 2000 approved the *Common List of Small-numbered Indigenous Peoples of Russia*. In several subjects of the Russian Federation there are regional lists of *Indigenous Peoples*\*.

2) *Indigenous Peoples*\* whose population is more than 50 thousand, such as Buryats, Karelians, Komi, Yakuts, Tuvans and other titular nations of republics and autonomous districts of the Russian Federation, many communities of whom practice traditional ways of the use of natural resources.

3) Minor ethnic groups identifying themselves as *Indigenous Peoples*\*, for example, Izhma Komi and Pomors.

4) Special ethnic and cultural groups, for example, groups of old inhabitants (Old Believers) that possess a distinctive culture and self-identification.

The complexity of the ethnic composition and socio-cultural diversity of local communes of Russia does not permit giving a full description of all ethnic and cultural groups; therefore, provisions of *Principle*\* 3 *shall*\* apply to any group that satisfies the Directive to *indicator*\* 3.1.1 of this standard.

*The Organization*\* interacts not with *Indigenous Peoples*\* as a whole, but with a particular community (*obshchina*, settlement, group, etc.) of *Indigenous Peoples*\* which is affected or *can*\* be affected by *The Organization's*\* management activities. To identify communities of *Indigenous Peoples*\* that *can*\* be impacted by *The Organization's*\* management activities, *Best Available Information*\* *may*\* be used:

- the Common List of small-numbered Indigenous Peoples of Russian Federation approved by the government of the Russian Federation;
- the List of Areas of Traditional Residence and Traditional Activities of small-numbered Indigenous Peoples of Russian Federation approved by the government of the Russian Federation;
- letters of inquiry to local self-government bodies;
- letters of inquiry to the Russian national or regional associations of small-numbered indigenous peoples of the North, Siberia and Far East of the Russian Federation and/or to non-government organizations that are the members of the Association;
- consultations with *interested stakeholders*\* and/or experts.

The traditional character of the use of natural resources by *Indigenous Peoples*\* communities *should*\* be assessed, for example, using the following criteria:

- the area of traditional use of natural resources is divided into land parcels, the boundaries of which are recognized by the members of the community (*obshchina*);
- traditional use of natural resource is practiced for several generations of the community members or their descendants seek to restore them;
- traditional use of natural resources is a substantial source of income or a source of resources for the community members;
- members of the *Indigenous Peoples*\* community have *customary* (including traditional) *rights*\* and/or *legally*\* registered rights to land parcels of traditional use of natural resources (concession, free of charge use) or undertake relevant efforts to receive *legal*\* recognition of their lands (if this is required by law);
- according to the opinion of experts and members of the local population, traditional use of natural resources by the community does not lead to depletion of the resources used.

### Annex B3 (new). Customary Rights (Reference Materials)

**Customary rights:** Rights which result from a long series of habitual or customary actions, constantly repeated, which have, by such repetition and by uninterrupted acquiescence (public consent to them), acquired the force of a law within a geographical or sociological unit.

Therefore, *customary rights*\* are understood as a system of norms and rules of conduct based not on the officially adopted laws and regulations, but on traditions and customs developed over a long period of time within a specific area.

A *customary right*\* *can*\* be recognized as legal provision to the extent not contrary to the law.

In many cases *customary rights*\* norms are not documented on paper.

#### **Customary rights\* can\* be either individual or collective**

The *customary rights*\* holder (subject) *can*\* be either a single individual or a collective body (a community within which each member is a holder of *customary rights*\* attributed to the group).

*Customary rights*\* *can*\* be expressed not only through action, but also through inaction towards the object of *customary rights*\*.

#### **Criteria of customary rights\***

- 1) duration: actions must represent a long-established practice repeated over a long term;
- 2) consistency: actions must represent consistent habitual practices, which include both action and inaction (inaction, for example, *can*\* be understood as a ban on visiting or using a particular forest site);
- 3) distribution: they are present in the area of a particular geographical or sociological unit;
- 4) the holders of *customary rights*\* *can*\* be people living (permanently or periodically) in proximity to the area where *customary rights*\* apply;
- 5) the holder of *customary rights*\* must maintain a lifestyle which makes them dependent (economically or culturally) on the use of a site, resource or object for which they claim their rights;
- 6) individual *customary rights*\* must be recognized by the group of *customary rights*\* holders.

#### **Examples of customary rights\*** (providing the criteria for *customary rights*\* are met):

- The right to use non-timber forest resources: collecting mushrooms, berries, medicinal and edible plants, etc. in a particular area;
- The right to hunting, amateur fishing, beekeeping (forest beekeeping), using related infrastructure (facilities, trails) in a particular area;
- The right to use hunting grounds, trails (traps) and hunting cabins;
- The right to engage in worship practices or maintain cultural traditions in a particular area;
- The right to make hay in a particular area;
- The right to use resources for traditional handicrafts.

This list of examples is not exhaustive.

**Annex B4 (new). FPIC**

1. According to the Glossary, **Free, Prior and Informed Consent\* (FPIC\*)** is a juridical condition whereby a person or community *can\** be said to have given consent to an action prior to its commencement, based upon a clear appreciation and understanding of the facts, implications and future *consequences\** of that action, and the possession of all relevant facts at the time when consent is given. *FPIC\** includes the right to grant, modify, withhold or withdraw approval.

The right for *indigenous Peoples\** and *local communities\** for *FPIC\** is defined by the United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples and ILO Convention 169 (The Indigenous and Tribal Peoples Convention). Following the respective provisions of these international documents, FSC extends its scope of application to *The Organizations\** and makes it binding for *The Organizations\** being certified to obtain *FPIC\** from *Indigenous Peoples\** and *local communities\** in cases specified in *Criteria\** 3.2 and 4.2.

The right for *FPIC\** is primarily aimed at protection of traditional lifestyles of *Indigenous Peoples\** communities and *local communities\** and sources of their livelihoods in case of both are really threatened. The *FPIC\** is to be used in cases when other mechanisms, such as *dispute\** resolution or damage reparation procedures, or mapping of social *HCVs\**, etc., are not sufficient to protect the rights of *Indigenous Peoples\** and *local communities\**. *FPIC\** shall *not\** be used as a substitute for such mechanisms.

2. The *FPIC\** concept is about fairly and rightfully set *customary\** and *legal rights\** based on long-established use of a specific area and/or natural resources on this area associated with traditional management activity, traditional fishing, hunting and handcrafts, or special religious, sacred or spiritual significance of the area associated with the traditional lifestyles.

The necessity to obtain *FPIC\** is stated in *Criteria\** 3.2, 3.3, 3.6, 4.2, and 4.8. Thus, *FPIC\** must be obtained from *Indigenous Peoples\** or *local communities\** in two cases:

- a) according to *Criteria\** 3.2, 3.3 and 4.2, to determine if *Indigenous Peoples\** or *local communities\** whose *legal\** or *customary rights\** for a particular area and its resources located within or nearby the *Management Unit\** and associated with their traditional activity *can\** be affected by *The Organization's\** planned management activities agree with such activities and the way they are planned;
- b) according to *Criteria\** 3.6 and 4.8, to obtain a consent from *Indigenous Peoples\** or *local communities\**, if *The Organization\** being certified is intended to use their traditional knowledge.

There were no cases of the use of *traditional knowledge\** of *Indigenous Peoples\** or *local communities\** by harvesting companies in the Russian Federation so far, so the b) case is not taken into account.

3. *FPIC\** has no veto power. *FPIC\** aims at reaching an agreement between a community and *The Organization\** with regard to the character, scope and restrictions of management activities within a certain part of the *managed area\**, for which or resources of which the community possesses *legal\** or *customary rights\** associated with their traditional management activity, traditional fishing, hunting and handcrafts, or special religious, sacred or spiritual significance of the area associated with their traditional lifestyles that *can\** be affected by the management activity of *The Organization\**. The consent is obtained through *engagement\** and considering the interests of both parties.

The process for obtaining *FPIC\** *can\** be lengthy. It is acceptable if *The Organization\** and right holders take part in the mutually agreed process of obtaining *FPIC\** that satisfies the community, is marked by a progress and is arranged in a good faith.



Good faith implies that the parties do everything possible in order to reach an agreement and conduct meaningful and constructive negotiations avoiding delays in negotiations and adhering to the agreements reached; sufficient time is provided to discuss and settle any debatable issues. In this case, if the community whose rights *can*\* be affected by the management activity has no objections, and there are no evidence of violation of such rights, *The Organization*\* may\* carry out management activities in parallel with the process of obtaining *FPIC*\*.

If the consent is not granted by the identified right holders for whatever reasons, *The Organization*\* shall\* avoid activity that affects respective rights. In this regard, right holders *can*\* refuse to grant *FPIC*\* for the planned management activities if *The Organization*\* does not act in a good faith during the *FPIC*\* process or if there is objective evidence that the abstaining from the planned management activities is the only way to avoid damage for *legal*\* or *customary rights*\* of the community stated in clause 4 of this Annex.

In cases listed below *The Organization*\* could be forced to refuse from obtaining *FPIC*\* and to use other ways of *engagement*\* with right holders in order to protect them:

1) When the requirement to obtain *FPIC*\* from *Indigenous Peoples*\* communities and *local communities*\* is in a conflict with other requirements of this standard. For example, if the community's refusal to grant *FPIC*\* for certain types of *The Organization's*\* management activities will lead to *significant*\* cuts of job, or to failure to fulfill other social liabilities – in other words, to *significant*\* adverse social *consequences*\* that *The Organization*\* is required to mitigate. Provided that *The Organization*\* identified the rights and raised the awareness among the communities in a good faith, *The Organization*\* *can*\* use that as a ground for refusal from *FPIC*\* and for application of other ways of *engagement*\* with right holders.

2) When obtaining *FPIC*\* from a community having a right for *FPIC*\* leads to a conflict between *The Organization*\* and other *FPIC*\* right holders, or between different *FPIC*\* right holders. Provided that *The Organization*\* identified the rights and raised the awareness among communities in a good faith, *The Organization's*\* *can*\* also use that as a ground for refusal from *FPIC*\* and for application of other ways of *engagement*\* with right holders.

The certification body shall\* be informed about such a situation and shall\* evaluate it on a case by case basis in coordination with *interested*\* or *affected stakeholders*\*.

- 4. The subject of *FPIC*\* is *legal*\* and *customary rights*\* of *Indigenous Peoples*\* communities and *local communities*\* for a particular area and/or resources of this area connected to their traditional lifestyles and traditional activities that *can*\* be affected by the management activity. These activities have to be an important source of their livelihoods. This refers to the following activities: traditional (as stated in the Law On Guarantees of the Rights of Indigenous Small-numbered Peoples of the Russian Federation) cattle raising, fur farming, beekeeping, fishing, hunting and gathering (of mushrooms, berries, wild-growing plants, and other *non-timber forest products*\*), extraction of widespread mineral resources for own needs, folk art crafts, and construction of traditional houses.**

Sites *can*\* be also regarded as related to traditional lifestyles if relevant evidences are available proving their special religious, sacred or spiritual significance for *Indigenous Peoples*\* communities and *local communities*\* across many generations and their significance for the community at present. The communities' rights for use of such sites *can*\* also be subject to *FPIC*\*.

If recognition of the community's *customary rights*\* that require *FPIC*\* is in conflict with the requirement for *The Organization*\* to follow all *applicable laws*\*, this shall\* be reported to the certification body, which shall\* evaluate the situation on a case by case basis, through *engagement*\* with *interested*\* or *affected stakeholders*\*.

If different right holders (representing *Indigenous Peoples*\* communities and *local communities*\*) claim rights for the same territory or resource and therefore are in conflict with each other, such rights are not subject to *FPIC*\* before the conflict is resolved by the communities. Meanwhile, it is not required from *The Organization*\* to participate in resolution of the conflict, if it is not a party of the conflict. In addition, if activities of communities'



representatives' are considered the direct violation of laws that came into effect by decisions of government authorities (for example, facts of poaching), *customary rights*\* related to such activities *can*\* not be subject to *FPIC*\* until the conflict between the community and respective authorities is resolved.

*Customary rights*\* *shall*\* be exercised directly by their holders. If the *customary rights*\* were transferred to third parties, such rights cease to be subject to *FPIC*\*.

The subject of *FPIC*\* are only *legal*\* and *customary rights*\* of *Indigenous Peoples*\* communities and *local communities*\* for a particular area and resources of this area related to their traditional management activities. Right to a healthy environment, right of free access to the forest, everyone's right to collect mushrooms, berries and other non-timber forest resources and to hunt in forests in general, not within a particular area, are not subject to *FPIC*\*. For example, common rights of Russian citizens stipulated in the national laws, in particular, rights of citizens "to visit forests freely and free of charge, to harvest and extract wild-growing fruits, berries, nuts, mushrooms and other resources for their own needs" (Forest Code of the Russian Federation, art.11, p.1) are not subject to *FPIC*\*.

Sites in the forest that are important for holders of hunting rights (such as salt licks, capercaillie lekking grounds, etc.) *may*\* be protected as *HCV*\* areas. In this case they have to be identified through *engagement*\* with *interested*\* or *affected stakeholders*\*. However, it is not required to obtain *FPIC*\* from holders of hunting rights.

If a group consisting of *Indigenous Peoples*\* or representatives of *local communities*\* received a legal permission for harvesting of some minor forest products within the *managed area*\* through a legally prescribed procedure, *legal*\* rights for the relevant activity are subject to *FPIC*\* under the following conditions only:

- a legally prescribed procedure to receive a legal permission for harvesting of minor forest products was used in order to legalize *customary rights*\* of the community or its part with regard to a particular area or its resources related to traditional management activities,
- minor forest products are harvested in line with long-established traditional management practices, and
- the legal permission is received to legally perform traditional management activities but not to gain profit.

In other cases such rights are not subject to *FPIC*\*, and a respective economic entity has equal rights with other entities. Issues related to meeting the interests of various economic entities are regulated by other *indicators*\* of the standard.

The main example of *legal*\* rights that require from *The Organization*\* to obtain *FPIC*\* is its activity within the territories of traditional natural resource use (TTNRU).

TTNRU is a type of specially protected areas in the Russian Federation. In particular, it is regulated by the Federal Law dated May 7, 2001 No. 49-FZ *On the Territories of Traditional Nature Resource Use of Indigenous Peoples of the North, Siberia and the Far East of the Russian Federation*.

Information about management restrictions in such areas *can*\* be not reflected at all or in full in forest planning documents (forest plans, district-level forest management plans, forest concession management plans). However, if such TTNRU were established by decisions of legitimate authorities of the constituent entities of the Russian Federation, rights of *Indigenous Peoples*\* for traditional activities stipulated in the TTNRU are fairly considered by them as *legal*\*. Therefore, in this case it is required to obtain *FPIC*\* from *Indigenous Peoples*\* for harvesting activities in the TTNRU.

5. **The scope of *FPIC*\*** is management activity on a particular area with regard to which and/or with regard to resources of which the community possesses *legal*\* or *customary rights*\* associated with their traditional management activity, traditional fishing, hunting and handcrafts, or special religious, sacred or spiritual significance of the area.



According to *Indicators*\* 3.1.2 and 4.1.2, *The Organization*\* shall\* identify all areas with regard to which or with regard to resources of which communities have rights that *can*\* be affected by its management activities. For this purpose, representatives of the communities are required to provide information with due diligence and through open and meaningful discussion that will permit *The Organization*\*:

- to identify rights (rights shall\* be inextricably linked with traditional activities or religious, sacred or spiritual significance of the area) which *can*\* be affected, map of the area (at least, description of the borders of this area shall\* be provided to allow showing it in *cartographic material*\*) for which the rights are applicable;
- to collect evidence supporting the rights; and
- to identify disputes or conflicts with regard to these rights.

Where reliable evidence exists that *The Organization*\* has taken reasonable efforts to meet the requirements of *Indicator*\* 3.1.2 or 4.1.2, but actions or inaction of *Indigenous Peoples*\* communities or *local communities*\* do not permit the identification of their rights and/or to *engage*\* them in order to coordinate the management activity, the *FPIC*\* mechanism is not applied with regard to such communities.

In other words, when communities of *Indigenous Peoples*\* or *local communities*\* are likely to possess rights for *FPIC*\*, while these communities provide no possibility to acknowledge them or to define measures required for their protection (for example, they abstain from *engagement*\* for no reason), rights for *FPIC*\* are assumed to be nonexistent.

Except for some rare cases, the *managed area*\* as a whole *can*\* not be the area which the community has rights for. Where *customary rights*\* of *Indigenous Peoples*\* communities and *local communities*\* cover large areas, zoning is required. It is possible to set zones where management activity *can*\* be conducted without any restrictions. No *FPIC*\* is required for such areas, provided that their mapping was implemented through *engagement*\* with right holders.

**Examples of large (ten and more compartments (kvartals)) areas subject to *customary rights*\*:**

- 1) Areas with the long-established system of tribal hunting grounds.
- 2) Reindeer grazing areas of *Indigenous Peoples*\*.

In such cases, a total ban of management activity within the whole area is unwanted, impossible or inappropriate, in particular, due to its large area.

- 3) Areas considered as “owned” for many generations by *Indigenous Peoples*\* communities and *local communities*\*, where the community used to control preservation of forests, where several types of use of resources were practiced, and the area can be distributed between different families.

The following order of actions is recommended in such cases:

- 1) To define borders of the area subject to *customary rights*\* through *engagement*\* with right holders.
  - 2) To obtain consent for harvesting operations in this area or part of it in principle from right holders.
  - 3) To define and document a mechanism and procedure for coordination of management activity operation through *engagement*\* with right holders.
  - 4) To include these items in *FPIC*\* documents.
- 6. The subject of *FPIC*\* is *Indigenous Peoples*\* communities and *local communities*\* having *legal*\* or *customary rights*\* with regard to the area or resources on the area stated in Clause 4 of this Annex, which *can*\* be affected by the management activity of *The Organization*\*.**

*Legal*\* or *customary rights*\* *can*\* be collective or the set of individual rights. Nevertheless, the subject of *FPIC*\* is the community. Coordination of the planned management activity and restrictions for it is arranged by *The Organization*\* in agreement with the community as a whole



(through decision made at common meetings, community meetings or other similar events, or through interviewing in social networks or other means of electronic communication, or through written or email surveys based on the simple majority of participants), or its representatives, which express the opinion of the community members holding respective rights (for example, community chiefs, heads of rural settlements, deputies of settlement councils, chairpersons of territorial self-government bodies, etc.), but not with each individual member of the community. The decision on the most acceptable place, time and format of *FPIC\** arrangement is made through *engagement\** with the community.

As a rule, communities which are holders of such rights, reside in historic populated localities, “traditional” villages, over many generations. As a rule, residents of forest settlements founded as temporary loggers camps or created in the past for persons displaced forcedly or voluntarily are not considered as *FPIC\** entities.

### **The process of obtaining *FPIC\****

Obtainment of *FPIC\** is a variant of *engagement\** with *Indigenous Peoples\** communities and *local communities\** possessing *legal\** or *customary rights\** with regard to the area or resources of such an area associated with traditional management activities, which are affected or *can\** be affected by *The Organization's\** management activities. *FPIC\** shall result in a documented consent of communities with the planned management activities of *The Organization\**. This documented consent with regard to *Indigenous Peoples\** communities shall also meet the requirements of *Indicator\** 3.3.2. Moreover, it *may\** be documented as a written agreement, or as a set of documents (maps, letters, contracts, minutes, etc.) containing evidence of meeting the requirements of the aforementioned *indicator\**. *The Organization\** shall identify the scope of persons representing the community's interests, which on behalf of the communities confirm that the consent with regard to planned management activities subject to *FPIC\** was granted through *engagement\** with *Indigenous Peoples\** communities or *local communities\**.

After *The Organization\** harmonized the planned management activity (*FPIC\**) with the community, its outcomes *may\** be expressed through *conservation\** of some areas as *HCV\** or other protected areas, where it was agreed not to perform any management activities, or measures on its *protection\** are agreed with the community.

Through *engagement\** with the community, *The Organization\** determines for which management operation the *FPIC\** is granted and the time period of its validity. *The Organization\** and community shall follow the agreed arrangements under *FPIC\**. It is possible for the community to withhold or modify the arrangements under *FPIC\** before it expires only in case if the agreement is violated by *The Organization\**.

**Annex C (new). Types of habitat features\* being identified at harvest areas during timber harvesting operations and measures for their protection\***

The table below provides a list of potential types of *habitat features\** (*key habitats\**) that *should\** be preserved at harvest areas during timber harvesting operations (including harvest area delineation, logging and hauling operations). The list of *habitat features\** *should\** be compiled considering local conditions (it *may\** be similar for all *managed areas\**). If necessary, local types *may\** be added to the list, while their characteristics and *conservation\** measures *may\** be refined. The list *may\** also include types of *rare\** and *threatened species\* habitats\**, if they are identified at the harvest area level according to *Criterion\* 6.4*.

*Habitat features\** are preserved to meet the requirements of *Criteria\* 6.4* and 6.6-6.8 related to biodiversity conservation and maintenance. Identification of small areas having attributes of *HCV\* 1* and 3-6 within harvest areas and choice of *conservation\** measures for them *shall\** be done in accordance to *Criteria\* 9.1-9.3* and Annex D1. Such areas are not listed in this Annex. To create the list and criteria (characteristics) of *habitat features\**, and to choose *conservation\** measures, the results of assessment of *environmental values\** (*Criterion\* 6.1*) *shall\** be considered, as well as *risks\** of negative *consequences\** of management activities (*Criterion\* 6.2*) for each *managed area\**. In particular, the *managed area\** *can\** lack some of the *habitat features\** or *can\** require conservation of the types absent in the list.

*Conservation\** measures *may\** include:

1. prohibition or restriction of cutting;
2. prohibition of road construction or equipment transportation;
3. establishment of buffer zones with identical or other *conservation\** status (for example, only selective cutting can be permitted) around *habitat features\**;
4. other measures required for *conservation\* of habitat features\**.

*Conservation\** measures *shall\** be selected based on specific characteristics of *habitat features\** (biology of species, etc.). The minimal size of the buffer zone for *habitat features\** (where applicable) *should\** be not less than the average height of the stand in mature and overmature forests.

Table 3. List of *habitat features\** being proposed for identification at harvest areas during timber harvesting operations, their characteristics and proposed *conservation\** measures

No.	Types of <i>habitat features*</i>	Characteristics of <i>habitat features*</i>	Identification details and <i>conservation*</i> measures
1	<i>Habitats*</i> of <i>rare*</i> and <i>threatened species*</i> of plants and fungi	Forest and non-forest sites being the <i>habitats*</i> of plants and fungi listed in the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation and/or red data books of the subjects of the Russian Federation. The aforementioned species <i>can*</i> be represented by individuals, groups or populations	<i>Habitats*</i> are identified according to <i>Indicator* 6.4.1</i> . <i>Conservation*</i> measures, including the size of the buffer zone, are established based on the biology of each species according to <i>Indicator* 6.4.3</i> and <i>shall*</i> be developed through <i>engagement*</i> with <i>interested stakeholders*</i> and/or with the use of <i>Best Available Information*</i> according to <i>Indicator* 6.4.1</i>
2	<i>Habitats*</i> of <i>rare*</i> and <i>threatened</i>	Forest and non-forest sites being the <i>habitats*</i> of species listed in the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation and/or red data books of the	<i>Habitats*</i> are identified in accordance with <i>Indicator* 6.4.1</i> . <i>Conservation*</i> measures, including the size of the buffer zone, are established based on the biology of each species in accordance

No.	Types of <i>habitat features</i> *	Characteristics of <i>habitat features</i> *	Identification details and <i>conservation</i> * measures
	<i>species</i> * of animals	subjects of the Russian Federation	with <i>Indicator</i> * 6.4.3 and <i>shall</i> * be developed through <i>engagement</i> * with <i>interested stakeholders</i> * and/or with the use of <i>Best Available Information</i> * according to <i>Indicator</i> * 6.4.1
3	Swamps and wet forest sites located in closed or poorly drained depressions	Forest sites on poorly drained and permanently wet soils, including the transition zone to drained parts of water catchments	<i>Conservation</i> * measures are established based on the <i>conservation</i> * value of such sites (not all such sites <i>may</i> * be subject to protection), and <i>shall</i> * be developed through <i>engagement</i> * with <i>interested stakeholders</i> * and/or with the use of <i>Best Available Information</i> * according to <i>Indicator</i> * 6.4.1
4	Forest sites at bog edges, minor forested islands on bogs	Forest sites at bog edges, wetlands with sparse forest, minor forested islands on bogs	<i>Conservation</i> * measures are established based on the environmental value of such sites and the hydrological regime of the site and <i>shall</i> * be developed through <i>engagement</i> * with <i>interested stakeholders</i> * and/or with the use of <i>Best Available Information</i> * according to <i>Indicator</i> * 6.4.1
5	Forest sites near <i>water bodies</i> * and temporary <i>watercourses</i> *	Forest sites along permanent <i>watercourses</i> *, including floodplains, as well as seasonal <i>watercourses</i> * (gullies, flat-bottom gullies (balkas), hollows, holes) where water movement takes place in the lesser part of the year; near natural discharges of subsurface water (springs, wells, groundwater discharge sites)	Sites that were not specified as <i>HCV</i> * 4, as well as sites of <i>HCV</i> * 4 that require additional <i>conservation</i> * measures to protect the values are identified. <i>Conservation</i> * measures <i>may</i> * include restrictions on harvesting and equipment access within the identified sites. If crossing of the <i>watercourse</i> * is unavoidable, temporary crossings <i>shall</i> * be installed
6	Forest sites on steep slopes, exposed bedrock and shallow soils subject to erosion and deflation	Forest sites along deeply cut valleys (canyons, ravines), at the border with bald mountains, exposed rocks (especially carbonates), ledges, cliffs, sandy dunes, boulder streams, buttes, and benches, cloughs, slopes of bog basins	Sites that were not specified as <i>HCV</i> * 4 and, if necessary, buffer zones around such sites are identified, as well as those <i>HCV</i> * 4 sites that require additional <i>conservation</i> * measures to protect their values. <i>Conservation</i> * measures <i>may</i> * include restrictions on harvesting and equipment access within the identified sites and the buffer zones
7	Large boulders and rock fragments	Forest sites near isolated large boulders and rock fragments covered with lichens and plants, as well as concentrations of such objects	Only sites of environmental value are identified

No.	Types of <i>habitat features</i> *	Characteristics of <i>habitat features</i> *	Identification details and <i>conservation</i> * measures
8	Karst manifestations	Cracks, sinkholes, ephemeral streams and ponds, upland bogs in areas where rocks containing relatively highly soluble materials (carbonates, gypsum, etc.) occur close to the soil surface	<i>Conservation</i> * measures are established based on environmental value of such sites ( <i>may</i> * be preserved not all such sites), and <i>shall</i> * be developed through <i>engagement</i> * with <i>interested stakeholders</i> * and/or with the use of <i>Best Available Information</i> * according to <i>Indicator</i> * 6.4.1
9	Natural salt licks	Forest sites near rock outcrops or discharge areas of water sources having high content of nutrients and elements (primarily sodium) needed for hooved animals	Sites that were not specified as <i>HCV</i> * 4 or <i>HCV</i> * 1.7 are identified. The size of buffer zones <i>shall</i> * be defined through <i>engagement</i> * with <i>interested stakeholders</i> * and/or with the use of <i>Best Available Information</i> * according to <i>Indicator</i> * 6.4.1
10	Forest gaps with concentration of deadwood and windfall microsites	Forest sites with concentrations of large fallen deadwood (diameter over 20 cm) at various stages of decomposition and windfall microsites formed as a result of the fall of large trees. When selecting objects for <i>conservation</i> *, the priority is necessary given to sites located on slopes as well as those having groups of reliable undergrowth	<i>Conservation</i> * measures <i>may</i> * provide for <i>protection</i> * of such sites as part of other valuable objects ( <i>may</i> * be protected not all such sites)
11	Snags, high stumps, single large fallen deadwood	Large snags and large 2-5-m high natural stumps of various species (with a diameter over 20 cm), large fallen deadwood (with a diameter over 20 cm) at various stages of decomposition	<i>Conservation</i> * measures <i>may</i> * provide for <i>protection</i> * of such objects as individual trees and their groups, as well as part of other valuable objects ( <i>may</i> * be preserved not all such objects). The criteria which kinds of such objects and how many of them are to be preserved <i>shall</i> * be defined through <i>engagement</i> * with <i>interested stakeholders</i> * and/or with the use of <i>Best Available Information</i> * according to <i>Indicator</i> * 6.4.1
12	Trees with holes	Single live or dead standing trees with holes	<i>Conservation</i> * measures <i>may</i> * provide for preservation of all such objects as individual trees or their groups to ensure wind resistance, as well as their <i>protection</i> * as part of other valuable objects
13	Old-growth trees and their groups	Large old-growth coniferous and deciduous trees and their groups. These are	<i>Conservation</i> * measures <i>may</i> * provide for <i>protection</i> * of individual trees or their groups to ensure wind resistance, as well

No.	Types of <i>habitat features</i> *	Characteristics of <i>habitat features</i> *	Identification details and <i>conservation</i> * measures
		typically trees with the most developed canopy, trees with multiple tops, and trees with multiple fires scars	as their <i>protection</i> * as part of other valuable objects ( <i>may</i> * be preserved not all such objects at the harvest area, unless harvesting of such trees and shrubs is prohibited by the legislation)
14	Trees and shrubs of <i>rare species</i> * and their groups	Tree and shrub species that are prohibited to harvest, other species rare in the area or located at the edge of <i>native range</i> *	<i>Conservation</i> * measures <i>may</i> * provide for preservation of such objects either as individual trees or their groups together with associated species, as well as part of other valuable objects
15	Bear hibernation sites	Sites of brown bear and black bear dens	Sites that were not specified as <i>HCV</i> * 1.7 are identified. The size of buffer zones <i>shall</i> * be defined through <i>engagement</i> * with interested stakeholders* and/or with the use of <i>Best Available Information</i> * according to <i>Indicator</i> * 6.4.1
16	Long-term dens and refugia for large carnivores	Sites with long-term dens and other refuges for badger, fox, tiger, leopard, wolverine, lynx and other large carnivores	Sites that were not specified as <i>HCV</i> * 1.7 are identified. The size of buffer zones <i>shall</i> * be defined through <i>engagement</i> * with interested stakeholders* and/or with the use of <i>Best Available Information</i> * according to <i>Indicator</i> * 6.4.1
17	Lekking grounds	Lekking grounds of birds, including capercaillie, black grouse, crane and great snipe	Sites that were not specified as <i>HCV</i> * 1.7 are identified. If necessary, a buffer zone <i>may</i> * be established around the identified sites
18	Trees with large nests	Trees with large nests are preserved, nests with a diameter over 1 m and sites with concentration of large nests are of special <i>value</i> *	<i>Conservation</i> * measures <i>shall</i> * ensure conservation of all such objects and provide for a buffer zone around the identified nests. <i>Conservation</i> * measures <i>may</i> * include restrictions for harvesting and equipment transportation, including seasonal ones. The size of buffer zones and <i>conservation</i> * measures <i>shall</i> * be defined through <i>engagement</i> * with interested stakeholders* and/or with the use of <i>Best Available Information</i> * according to <i>Indicator</i> * 6.4.1
19	Other <i>habitat features</i> * of animals, plants and fungi	Other types of <i>habitat features</i> * of animals, plants and fungi, <i>conservation</i> * of which is recognized desirable under the conditions of the <i>managed area</i> *	<i>The Organization</i> *, if necessary, develops the list of such objects using the <i>Best Available Information</i> * and based on the requirements of lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament and recommendations of interested stakeholders*

## Annex D1. High Conservation Values

### HCV IDENTIFICATION

Identification of *HCV\** is a process of search for *HCV\** and/or attributes of their presence within the *managed area\** or *areas\** and, if necessary, at the adjacent areas, and determination of their significance. *HCV\** identification *shall\** include:

- implementing activities for each *HCV\** type/subtype indicated in this Annex;
- conducting consultations with *affected stakeholders\** and *interested stakeholders\**;
- providing justification of statements about the absence of any *HCV\** type/subtype within the *managed area or areas\**;
- interpreting the results of *HCV\** identification consistent with the *precautionary approach\**; and
- inclusion of the *HCV\** data in the *management plan\**;

As a result of *HCV\** identification, the following information *shall\** be obtained and recorded in the *management plan\**:

- the list and description of identified *HCV\**;
- map/*cartographic materials\** of identified *HCV\**;
- justification of the absence of any *HCV\** types/subtypes;
- possible *threats\** of loss of and/or damage to the identified *HCV\** as a result of *The Organization's\** management activities, as well as other factors;
- the list of required measures for maintaining and/or enhancing *HCV\**, including the set management regime for each *HCV\** type/subtype;
- the list of the sources of information used; and
- the list and description of consultations conducted with *affected stakeholders\**, *interested stakeholders\** and experts.

*The management plan\** *shall\** also contain among other items a procedure how to act when *HCV\** were identified outside the routine process of *HCV\** identification (for example, during delineation of harvest areas and appearance of new data on *HCV\**).

### Gradualness in the context of *HCV\** identification

*HCV\** of all types/subtypes *shall\** be identified prior to any management activities within the whole *managed area* or *areas\**. However, for some types/subtypes of small-size *HCV\**, which demand significant time, field work and/or involvement of external experts for their appropriate identification, and whose area knowingly does not exceed 5% of the *managed area* or *areas\**, their presence *may\** be assessed only preliminary, with a possibility to subsequently refine their location and borders. In any case, the management activities within a specific part of the *managed area\** *shall not\** begin until location and borders of such *HCV\** will be refined for this part of the *managed area\**. The following *HCV\** refer to these types/subtypes:

- HCV 1.5. *Ecosystems\** with high concentrations of *biological diversity\**;
- HCV 1.6. Other sites of concentration of endemic species, and *rare\**, *threatened* or endangered *species\**;
- HCV 1.7. Key (including seasonal) *habitats\** of animals;
- HCV 3. Rare *ecosystems\** and *habitats\**;
- HCV 5. Community needs; and
- HCV 6. Cultural *values\**.

In this case *The Organization\** *shall\** develop and include in the *management plan\** a step-by-step plan of refining location and borders of the respective *HCV\** types/subtypes, including the list of areas and the work timeline aligned with plans of management activities.

### Sources of Information for HCV Identification

*HCV\** *shall\** be identified using *Best Available Information\** for all *HCV\** types/subtypes. This also means that *The Organization\** *shall\** engage the most relevant data on *HCV\**. As minimum, the following data *shall\** be used (if available):

- publications devoted to the *HCV\** identification, assessment of *biodiversity\** and valuable natural areas, regarding the *managed area or areas\** for which *HCV\** are being identified;
- *cartographic materials\**, including topographic maps of all available scales, forest plans (maps);
- territorial planning schemes of a subject of the Russian Federation;
- forest management plans (lesnoy plan) of a subject of the Russian Federation and respective district-level forest management plans (lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament lesnichestva) relevant for the *managed area or areas\**;
- schemes (projects, plans) for the development of the federal and regional-level systems of *Protected Nature Areas\**;
- Information provided by the *affected stakeholders\**, *interested stakeholders\** and experts;
- harvest area allocation materials.

*The Organization\** shall use data on the presence of *HCV\** and their identification methods, which are available at FSC Russia website (<https://ru.fsc.org/>) and HCVF website (<http://www.hcvf.ru/>). The majority of the mentioned data on *HCV\** are present on these websites as publications and maps.

If several methodological recommendations for *HCV\** identification and *conservation\** are available for the same area, all of them shall be used to identify *HCV\**. When selecting *HCV\* conservation\** measures for similar *HCV\** types/subtypes indicated in various publications, the strictest of the proposed measures shall be used or they shall be selected based on the consultations with relevant *interested stakeholders\** and/or *affected stakeholders\**.

If *The Organization\** has doubts with regard to the credibility and/or relevance of the *HCV\** data published or provided by the *affected stakeholders\**, *interested stakeholders\** and experts or disagrees about the proposed *HCV\** identification methods or *HCV\* conservation\** measures, the issue shall be settled in consultations with *affected stakeholders\** and *interested stakeholders\**, involving relevant experts.

*Candidate PNA\** in the *managed area or areas\** borders can indicate the presence of *HCV\**. Therefore, information about the *candidate PNA\** (publications, descriptions, justifications and cartographic material\*) shall be assessed for the presence of *HCV\** during identification, involving *interested stakeholders\** who proposed to establish the *PNA\** (if possible).

*The Organization\** shall analyze any new information regarding *HCV\** within the *managed area or areas\**, including publications and *cartographic material\** displayed on the aforementioned websites, data provided by *affected stakeholders\**, *interested stakeholders\** and experts. New information on the presence of *HCV\** can be also obtained during the planning of harvest areas, harvest area allocation and logging operations. If such new information is obtained, *The Organization\** shall assess the data and, if necessary, make relevant amendments to *HCV\** identification materials and *HCV\** management plans.

### **Correspondence between HCV Types/Subtypes and Accounting Areas with HCVs**

One and the same forest area can belong to a number of *HCV\** types/subtypes at once. If areas with different identified *HCV\** types/subtypes overlap (coincide), they shall be described separately, indicating the area of each site. When calculating the total area of *HCV\**, the overlapping areas shall be counted only once.

In *The Organization's\** public summaries, the areas of *HCV\** sites are recorded separately for each type/subtype, including assigned *conservation\** measures. The total area shall be given with account for the overlapping of different *HCV\** types (if such overlapping exists). The accuracy of calculation of *HCV\** areas shall be not less than a hectare.

### **Possible HCV Status in the Russian Legislation and its Consideration when Identifying HCVs**

All existing and *candidate PNA\**, as well as their protection zones, shall be recognized by *The Organization\** as one of the *HCV\** subtypes (depending on their types and/or main objects of *protection\**), or based on the consultations with *interested stakeholders\**, a judgment can be made about the absence of *HCV\** within the *PNA\** as a whole or in its part. In the latter case,

such areas *may*\* be not accounted for when calculating the total area of *HCV*\*. However, the legal management regime of the *PNA*\* *shall*\* be observed anyway.

The *Organization*\* *shall*\* attribute all territories of traditional natural resource use (*TNTRU*) established by the decisions of authorities or local self-governments as *HCV*\* subtype 5.12.

The *Organization*\* *shall*\* attribute protective forests (PF) and special protection forest habitats (SPFH) within the *managed area or areas*\* to one of *HCV*\* types indicated in Table 4, except for the types that are marked in the table as “not *HCV*\*”. If necessary, *The Organization*\* *may*\* refer particular PF and SPFH categories to other *HCV*\* types based on consultations with *interested stakeholders*\*, *affected stakeholders*\* and/or experts.

Table 4. Correspondence between categories of protective forests and special protection forest habitats (SPFH) and *HCV*\* types

Name of category	<i>HCV</i> * type
<b>Protective Forests<sup>5</sup></b>	
<b>1) forests located within protected nature areas</b>	Depending on PNA specifics, to the relevant <i>HCV</i> *
<b>2) forests located in water protection zones</b>	<i>HCV</i> * 4
<b>3) forests fulfilling protective functions for natural objects and other sites</b>	
a) forests located in the first and second belts of sanitary protection zones for drinking water and industrial and domestic water supply	<i>HCV</i> * 4, <i>can</i> * be referred to <i>HCV</i> * 5 if used by local people for satisfaction of their needs
b) forest buffer belts along railways of general use, federal motor roads of general use own by the subjects of the Russian Federation	Not <i>HCV</i> *
c) green zones	<i>HCV</i> * 5
c.1) park forests	<i>HCV</i> * 5
d) urban forests	<i>HCV</i> * 5
e) forests located in the first, second and third zones of sanitary protection areas (mountainous and sanitary) in health improvement sites and health resorts	<i>HCV</i> * 5
<b>4) valuable forests</b>	
a) state protective forest strips	<i>HCV</i> * 4
b) anti-erosion forests	<i>HCV</i> * 4
c) forests located in desert, semi-desert, forest-steppe, forest-tundra zones, steppes and mountains	<i>HCV</i> * 4
d) forests of scientific or historical significance	<i>Can</i> * be referred to <i>HCV</i> * 5 or <i>HCV</i> * 6, <i>can</i> * be regarded as non- <i>HCV</i> *
e) nut harvesting zones	<i>HCV</i> * 5
f) fruit and berry plants in forests	<i>HCV</i> * 5
g) ribbon-like pine forests	<i>HCV</i> * 4
h) strict protection forest belts along water bodies	<i>HCV</i> * 4
i) protective forest strips for spawning grounds of fish	<i>HCV</i> * 1, <i>can</i> * be referred to <i>HCV</i> * 5* if used by local people for satisfaction of their needs

<sup>5</sup> In accordance with the Russian Forest Code, Federal Law No 200-FZ as of December 04 2006 (version as of August 03 2018).

Name of category	HCV* type
<b>SPFH<sup>6</sup></b>	
<b>1a. Riverbank protection forests</b>	<i>HCV* 4</i>
<b>1b. Soil protective forest areas located on slopes of ravines</b>	<i>HCV* 4</i>
<b>2. Edges of forests bordering treeless areas</b>	<i>HCV* 4</i>
<b>3. Seed growing sites:</b>	
elite forest stands (plyusovye lesnye nasazhdenia)	Not <i>HCV*</i>
seed plantations	Not <i>HCV*</i>
permanent seed plantations	Not <i>HCV*</i>
mother plantations	Not <i>HCV*</i>
archives of elite tree clones	Not <i>HCV*</i>
trial plantations	Not <i>HCV*</i>
ecological population trial plantations	Not <i>HCV*</i>
provenance trial plantations	Not <i>HCV*</i>
forest stands with elite trees	Not <i>HCV*</i>
<b>4. Strict protection forest areas</b>	Depends on the site specifics – <i>can*</i> be referred to <i>HCV* 1, HCV* 2, HCV* 3</i>
<b>5. Forest areas with relic and endemic plants</b>	Depends on the site specifics – <i>can*</i> be referred to <i>HCV* 3, HCV* 1</i>
<b>6. Habitats of <i>rare*</i> and <i>threatened species*</i> of wildlife</b>	Depending on the site specifics – <i>can*</i> be referred to <i>HCV* 3, HCV* 1</i>
<b>7. Other special protection sites:</b>	
forest strips in mountains along the upper forest border with treeless areas	<i>HCV* 4</i>
small forest sites located in treeless areas	<i>HCV* 4</i>
protective forest strip along dividing crests and watershed lines	<i>HCV* 4</i>
forest areas on steep mountain slopes	<i>HCV* 4</i>
special protection sites of state nature reserves (gosudarstvennyye prirodnye zakazniki)	Depending on PNA specifics, to relevant <i>HCV*</i>
forests in protection zones of state nature reserves, national parks and other special protection nature areas, as well as areas reserved for establishment of federal-level special protection nature areas	Depending on PNA specifics, relevant <i>HCV*</i>
objects of national forest heritage	Depending on the on the site specifics – <i>can*</i> be referred to <i>HCV*2</i> , or to <i>HCV* 5, HCV* 6</i> (if used by local people)
forest sites around wood grouse lekking grounds	<i>HCV* 1, can*</i> be referred to <i>HCV* 5</i> if used by local people for satisfaction of their needs
forest sites around natural salt leaks	<i>HCV* 1, can*</i> be referred to <i>HCV* 5</i> if used by local people for satisfaction of their needs
forest strips along beaver-populated riverbanks or other water bodies	<i>HCV* 1, can*</i> be referred to <i>HCV* 5</i> if used by local

<sup>6</sup> In accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Ecology (Minpriroda), Order No. 122 as of March 29, 2018 *On Approval of Forest Inventory Instruction*.

Name of category	HCV* type
	people for satisfaction of their needs
honey-yielding forest sites	HCV* 5
permanent sample plots	Not HCV*
forest areas around health resorts, children summer camps, holiday centers, boarding holiday houses, tourist camps and other recreational and health facilities	HCV* 5
forest areas around mineral sources used for care and treatment purpose or having perspectives as such	HCV* 5
forest strips along tourist trails	HCV* 5, HCV* 6
forest sites around rural populated areas and gardeners' partnerships	HCV* 5

Other SPFH categories stipulated in forest inventory materials *shall*\* refer to a certain HCV\* type/subtype depending on the *conservation\* value\**, except for categories that do not belong to HCV\* (for example, stands with small growing stock, sparse stands, shrub vegetation, reference stands and others).

The Russian legislation also allows establishment of various management restrictions (zones with special land use conditions) to other sites. Information on such sites *shall*\* be taken into account during identification of HCV\*. Some of them, if meeting the criteria for HCV\* identification, *may*\* also refer to HCV\*.

### HCV Monitoring

The goal of HCV\* monitoring is to define the effectiveness of measures implemented for HCV\* management and towards the achievement of *management objectives\**. The monitoring results *shall*\* be used by *The Organization\** to refine measures implemented to maintain and/or enhance HCV\* if necessary. Based on the monitoring results the *Management plan\**, if necessary, *may*\* be adjusted in order to ensure HCV\* maintenance and/or enhancement.

All changes with respect to HCV\* that occurred during the revision period (as defined by *The Organization\** according to *Indicators\** 8.1.1 and 8.2.1, but not more than one year), including identification of new HCV\*, changes in *protection\** measures, loss of HCV\* etc. *shall*\* be described in the monitoring report according to *Indicator\** 8.3.1, as well as respective changes to the table depicting HCV\* areas *shall*\* be made.

If monitoring results demonstrate reduction/loss of HCV\*, *The Organization\** *shall*\* conduct consultations with *affected stakeholders\**, *interested stakeholders\** and experts to develop measures aimed to minimize/halt the reduction of HCV\*. In case when HCV\* were reduced or lost as a result of *The Organization's\** activity, *The Organization\** *shall*\* with *engagement\** of *interested stakeholders\**, *affected stakeholders\** and experts develop and implement measures to *restore\** this *value\** or to compensate the damage according to the *Indicator\** 9.4.3.

### HCV Mapping

All identified HCV\* *shall*\* be marked on the map/*cartographic material\**, which are included in the *management plan\**. For clear and unambiguous identification of the location of each HCV\* area on the map/*cartographic material\** at least the following information *shall*\* be presented:

- main *water bodies\**;
- main roads;
- populated areas;
- boundaries of the *managed area or areas\**; and
- forest blocks (*kvartals*).



When *Indigenous Peoples\** or *local communities\** determine that placing information about some of identified *HCV\* 5* or *HCV\* 6* in documentation or on *cartographic material\** would threaten the value or *protection\** of the sites, then other means *shall\** be used to store information on their location.

Access of third parties to *cartographic material\** concerning some of *HCV\* 5* or *HCV\* 6 shall\** be restricted as well, if *Indigenous Peoples\** communities or *local communities\** determine that disclosure of the information would threaten the *value\** or *protection\** of the sites specified in *Indicator\* 3.5.1*. In such cases *The Organization\* shall\** provide *confidentiality\** of information obtained.

The scale of map or *cartographic material\* shall\** be enough to identify unambiguously the boundaries of all *HCV\* sites*. It is acceptable to mark smaller *HCV\* sites*, with an area less than 100 ha, with non-scale symbols. Every map *shall\** provide for map symbols, indicating each *HCV\* type/subtype*, which is marked on the map, as well as *protection\** measures specified for it. *The Organization\* shall\** make the *HCV\* map* or *cartographic material\* publicly available\** for *interested stakeholders\** and *affected stakeholders\**, including remotely, except for *confidential information\**.

### IMPLEMENTATION OF ACTIONS AIMED TO MAINTAIN AND/OR ENHANCE HCV

The main objective of *HCV\* management* is *long-term\* HCV\* maintenance* or enhancement. Maintenance is a minimal obligatory condition, while enhancement is an additional one realized to the extent possible.

Based on the results of *HCV\* identification*, *The Organization\* shall\** develop actions for *HCV\* maintenance* and/or enhancement, including *conservation\** measures for each area with identified *HCV\**, and include them in the *management plan\**.

*The Organization\* shall\** undertake *reasonable\** efforts to prevent any possible damage to *HCV\** within the *managed area or areas\**, both resulting from own activities and activities of third parties.

### HCV Conservation Measures

*The Organization\* shall\** develop such *HCV\* conservation\** measures that will ensure maintenance of all identified *HCV\**. If contradicting measures are required for maintenance of different *HCV\**, it is essential to select *conservation\** measures with *engagement\** of *affected stakeholders\**, *interested stakeholders\** and experts, considering the vulnerability and occurrence of the identified *HCV\**, as well as their significance for *affected stakeholders\** (for *HCV\* 4-6*). *Conservation\** measures *shall\** be based on the national *HCV\* interpretation* (see below). Modification of the measures (in case *The Organization\** decides to amend earlier identified measures) *shall\** be made through *engagement\** with relevant *affected stakeholders\** and/or *interested stakeholders\**.

If the legal forest management regime of a particular area (if there is any, for example, for *PNA\**, *SPFH*, *PF* and others) is not sufficient for maintenance of the identified *HCV\**, *The Organization\* shall\** establish additional *conservation\** measures ensuring *HCV\* maintenance*.

*Conservation\** measures in *HCV\* areas shall\** be determined considering that any activities within them:

- *shall\** always be carried out in accordance with the *precautionary approach\** to minimize the *risk\** of *HCV\* damage*;
- *shall\** be carried out considering the results of monitoring; if necessary, based on the results of monitoring, appropriate corrections are made to the *management plan\**; and
- *shall\** consider potential *consequences\** of management activities, both direct and indirect, (for example, increased accessibility and higher *risk\** of forest fires as a result of *infrastructure\* development*).

Major options for *conservation\** measures are given in Table 5.

In all HCV\* areas, the activities listed below are permitted if they are not prohibited by the acting regulatory documents and also unless alternatives are proposed by *interested stakeholders\**, *affected stakeholders\** and/or experts with whom consultations are held:

- recreational visits by local people (without setting up camps or making a fire);
- hunting and fishing in accordance with the current legislation;
- harvesting of *non-timber forest products\** (mushrooms, berries, medicinal plants, cones and others); and
- arrangement of firebreaks and fire barriers along the perimeter of the identified HCV\* and installation of local information boards.

Table 5. Major options for *conservation\** measures

<b>Conservation* measure</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>For which HCV* is applicable</b>
Strict <i>conservation*</i>	Timber harvesting and <i>infrastructure*</i> development are prohibited. In some cases based on consultations with relevant <i>interested stakeholders*</i> , <i>affected stakeholders*</i> and experts, it is possible to set up fire prevention <i>infrastructure*</i> . If necessary, other activities, which <i>can*</i> reduce the <i>value*</i> of natural sites, are controlled (for example, hunting, fishing and others). Based on the <i>precautionary approach*</i> strict <i>conservation*</i> measures <i>should*</i> be also applied when there is no scientifically-grounded set of measures to ensure maintenance of the <i>environmental value*</i> of the identified HCV*	HCV* 1, 2, 3, in some individual cases for HCV* 4-6
Restriction/modification of some forest management activities	Some forest management activities are prohibited, for example, clearcutting, the felling intensity is restricted, seasonal limitations are imposed, the choice of the size and orientation of felling areas, a ban on felling of some species, <i>conservation*</i> of particular <i>habitats*</i> , special rotation periods etc.	Primarily for HCV* 4-6, in some cases for HCV* 1 and HCV* 3, mainly applicable for various categories of PF
Regeneration activities	Forest <i>regeneration*</i> on harvested areas or burnt areas, strengthening of slopes, removal of alien species etc.	Primarily HCV* 4-6, in some cases for HCV* 1 and HCV* 3

In all HCV\*, *The Organization\* shall not\** carry out the following activities unless alternatives are proposed by *interested stakeholders\**, *affected stakeholders\** and/or experts who are involved in consultations:

- vegetation burning inside and along the perimeter of the identified HCV\*;
- major construction of any facilities;
- disturbance to the hydrological regime of the site (blocking of watercourses, building drainage systems and other);
- holding of mass events;
- use of chemical methods and ways for forest protection;
- artificial regeneration with *alien species\**; and
- other types of managements activities, which *can\** lead to the HCV\* loss or degradation.

Besides that, *The Organization\* shall\** inform other organizations and persons that conduct their activities within the *managed area or areas\** about the HCV\* presence and required



*conservation*\* measures. Whenever possible, *The Organization*\* shall\* undertake measures to prevent any actions of external persons and organizations which *can*\* damage *HCV*\*.

When describing each *HCV*\* type/subtype below, *conservation*\* measures corresponding to each type/subtype are given. By the results of consultations with *interested stakeholders*\* and *affected stakeholders*\*, *The Organization*\* may\* also undertake other *conservation*\* measures. The *conservation*\* measures may\* be the same for the entire *HCV*\* area or may\* vary depending on the territory zoning according to the *value*\* and functional designation.

### Precautionary Approach

In the context of *HCV*\* management the *precautionary approach*\* means:

- *the managed area*\* or its part shall\* not be engaged in any forest management activities or considered when calculating the *allowable cut levels*\* prior to *HCV*\* identification and determination of the required *conservation*\* measures (see Gradualness in the context of *HCV*\* identification);
- if there are evidence of the *HCV*\* presence or data on the *HCV*\* presence are given by *affected stakeholders*\*, *interested stakeholders*\* or experts and available in sources of literature, it shall\* be accepted that these *HCV*\* truly exist, prior to verifying the information;
- in case of doubts regarding the credibility or relevance of the data on the existing *HCV*\*, *The Organization*\* may\* conduct additional assessment of *HCV*\* in order to refine the available data and based on the results decide on the presence of *HCV*\*, their boundaries and required *conservation*\* measures;
- prior to the required verification *The Organization*\* shall\* exclude management activities in areas of potential *HCV*\* presence or establish *conservation*\* measures agreed with *interested stakeholders*\*, thus eliminating any possibility of the loss of *HCV*\* or damage to their *values*\*;
- if any *HCV*\*, including *candidate PNA*\*, lacks developed management actions (including forest use regime), *The Organization*\* shall\* exclude planning and implementation of any management activities in these areas until *conservation*\* measures for *HCV*\* are developed; and
- during the consultation process with *interested stakeholders*\* and *affected stakeholders*\* regarding the updated status of some *HCV*\* areas or *HCV*\* types/subtypes and their appropriate *conservation*\* measures, management activities in these sites shall not\* be carried out until consultations are completed and a decision on the status and *conservation*\* measures for these areas is made. In individual cases, based on the agreement with *interested stakeholders*\* and/or *affected stakeholders*\*, candidate *HCV*\* areas could be partially involved in management operations for the period of assessment and consultations. In this case, precise deadlines for the finalization of the process shall\* be specified.

### ENGAGEMENT WITH AFFECTED AND INTERESTED STAKEHOLDERS, INVOLVEMENT OF EXPERTS

*Engagement*\* of *The Organization*\* with *interested stakeholders*\*, *affected stakeholders*\* and experts on *HCV*\* is organized primarily through consultations during which *The Organization*\* shall\* enable participation and ensure due consideration of the opinion and data provided by *interested stakeholders*\*, *affected stakeholders*\* and experts.

Prior to consultations on *HCV*\*, *The Organization*\* shall\* identify *interested stakeholders*\* and *affected stakeholders*\*. As a rule, the list of *affected stakeholders*\* related to *HCV*\* includes (but is not restricted to) individuals, groups or entities located/residing in the neighborhood of the *Management Unit*\*. The list of declared *interested stakeholders*\* related to *HCV*\* is continuously updated and published at FSC Russia website (<https://ru.fsc.org/index.htm>). *Affected stakeholders*\* and key *interested stakeholders*\* (at least those who declared themselves as *interested stakeholders*\* for the assessed area or *HCV*\* type/subtype) shall\* be notified about conduction of consultations related to *HCV*\* and possibilities of taking part in them.

Consultations shall\* be conducted both at the stage of *HCV*\* identification and during the development of actions for *HCV*\* maintenance and/or enhancement (including *conservation*\* measures).



Also, *The Organization\**, *interested stakeholders\** and *affected stakeholders\** may\* engage experts when conducting consultations on particular issues of *HCV\** management.

To conduct the consultations, *The Organization\** shall\* provide *interested stakeholders\**, *affected stakeholders\** and experts for all the required data on *HCV\**, including information on the location and boundaries of the identified *HCV\**, *HCV\* conservation\** measures, borders of the *managed area or areas\** and other data.

Consultations shall\* continue until common ground is achieved on the issue of *HCV\** identification and maintenance measures with an agreement explicitly expressed by *interested stakeholders\** and/or *affected stakeholders\**, or if a response from *interested stakeholders\** and/or *affected stakeholders\** was not received within a *reasonable\** period of time.

## NATIONAL INTERPRETATION OF HCV TYPES AND SUBTYPES

This section provides for a description of each *HCV\** type/subtype, including:

- international definition of *HCV\** type;
- national interpretation, including identified *HCV\** subtypes and their characteristic attributes;
- required or recommended *conservation\** measures; and
- a list of sources of information indicating regions and/or research works in which this *HCV\** type was already identified or described.

This list is not exhaustive; *The Organization\** may\* identify supplementary *HCV\** subtypes in addition to the ones listed below.

### HCV 1. Species diversity

**Concentrations of *biological diversity\** including endemic species, and *rare\**, *threatened* or *endangered species\**, that are significant at global, regional or national levels**

It includes the following subtypes:

#### ***HCV 1.1. Wetlands (WL) of Global, National or Regional Importance***

##### *Identification methods*

The governmental Decree No. 1050 as of September 13 1994 approved the list of 35 wetland sites (Ramsar sites) with a total area of 10 million ha. The information on *WL\** of international importance (including required *conservation\** measures) is given in the publication *Wetlands of International Importance in Russia* (2012). Besides, there is a list of areas with perspectives of being designated as Ramsar wetland sites (perspective (“shadow”) list of Ramsar sites). In Russia, the list of 166 sites was developed by the All-Russian Research Institute for Nature Protection (*Vodno-bolotnye ugodya...*, 2000). In a number of regions, *WL* of national and regional levels have been identified (*Vodno-bolotnye ugodya...*, 2001, 2005, 2006), as well as valuable wetlands, including those meeting the criteria of the international Convention on Wetlands (*Valuable Wetlands*, 1999). In addition to the aforementioned publications, the information on location and recommended *conservation\** measures for *WL* are also available at <http://www.fesk.ru/> and [HCVF.ru \(http://hcvf.ru/\)](http://hcvf.ru/).

##### *Conservation\* measures*

As a rule, required general *conservation\** measures for *WL* are given in the description of a specific *WL*, in publications and at the website. Whether *conservation\** measures are not described, described not in sufficient detail and not clearly enough, or if *The Organization\** considers it expedient to apply other *conservation\** measures, consultations with *interested stakeholders\** shall\* be held to address *conservation\** measures and the use of *WL*.

#### ***HCV 1.2. Important Bird Areas of Russia (IBAR)***

##### *Identification method*



The identification method of important bird areas was developed by Birdlife International; in Russia their identification is made under the program of the Russian Bird Conservation Union. The methodology of identification, information on location and description of all IBAR are provided at the site of Birdlife International at <http://www.birdlife.org/datazone/site> and at the site of the Russian Bird Conservation Union at <http://www.rbcu.ru/programs/54/>, as well as in a number of publications (*Kluychevye ornitologicheskie...*, 2000, 2006, 2009). Information on the IBAR boundaries is also available at the HCVF.ru (<http://hcvf.ru/>).

#### Conservation\* measures

As a rule, required general *conservation\** measures for IBAR are given in the descriptions of the specific IBARs in aforementioned publications and at the website. Whether the *conservation\** measures are not described, described not in sufficient detail and not clearly enough, or *The Organization\** considers it expedient to apply other *conservation\** measures, consultations with *interested stakeholders\* shall\** be held.

### **HCV 1.3. Important Plant Areas (IPA)**

#### Identification method

IPA are natural sites having special importance for *conservation\** of the diversity of flora and vegetation. The identification of these territories is based on international principles developed by Plantlife ([http://www.plantlife.org.uk/international/wild\\_plants/IPA/ipa\\_criteria\\_and\\_methodology/](http://www.plantlife.org.uk/international/wild_plants/IPA/ipa_criteria_and_methodology/)). In Russia KBT are identified for some regions, namely Murmansk Oblast, Altai-Sayan Ecoregion, namely Altai Kray, Kemerovo Oblast, the Republic of Altai, Khakassia and Tuva. In total 82 IPA were identified in Altai-Sayan Ecoregion, with the majority of them containing forested areas. The information of IPA location is also available at the HCVF website (<http://hcvf.ru/>).

#### Conservation\* measures

The list of the identified IPA, lists of species and their *habitats\** and required *conservation\** measures for IPA in the aforementioned regions can be found in publications (*Kluchevye botanicheskie territorii...*, 2009; Konstantinova and others, 2008). Whether the *conservation\** measures are not described, described not in sufficient detail and not clearly enough, or *The Organization\** considers it expedient to apply other *conservation\** measures, consultations with *interested stakeholders\* shall\** be held.

### **HCV 1.4. Areas of Special Conservation Interest (Emerald Network)**

#### Identification method

The general methodology of ASCI identification was approved by the Standing Committee of the Bern Convention. In Russia, the sites recommended to be included in the Emerald Network were identified for some subjects of the Russian Federation in European Russia (*Izumrudnaya kniga...*, 2011-2013; <http://www.xidi.ru/>; HCVF web site, <http://hcvf.ru/>).

#### Conservation\* measures

Most ASCIs coincide with the existing *PNA\**; however, some areas do not have an official conservation status yet. In ASCI descriptions, the aforementioned publication and website provide information on location of these areas, data on *habitats\** and *rare species\**, as well as recommended *conservation\** measures. When determining *conservation\** measures in the existing *PNA\**, *The Organization\* shall\** be guided by the management regime specified for this *PNA\**. Whether the *conservation\** measures are not described, described not in sufficient detail and not clearly enough, or *The Organization\** considers it expedient to apply other *conservation\** measures, consultations with *interested stakeholders\* shall\** be held.

### **HCV 1.5. Ecosystems\* with High Biodiversity**

#### Identification method

This *HCV\** type includes forest areas and forest natural communities that are not listed in the aforementioned types, for which high biodiversity was identified based on field studies and other

data. Most *HCV\** of this type have specific regional characteristics. Examples of such communities are Tertiary relic Colchian forests in the Western Caucasus, Key bogs (*Bolotnye ekosystemy...*, 2006) and others. In many regions, this *HCV\** type *can\** include Siberian pine and Korean pine forests, multi-species forests (forest sites, roughly equal to the size of a subcompartment (vydel), where the tree species diversity is considerably above the average for the district-level forest management unit (lesnichestvo) and/or region). To obtain data on forest areas and forest natural communities with high biodiversity, The *Organization\** shall send requests to research institutions and nature conservation organizations conducting studies (or possessing data) in this region (see also the HCVF website, <http://hcvf.ru/>).

#### Conservation\* measures

As a rule, all types of logging and forest *infrastructure\** development shall be prohibited. In other cases, *conservation\** measures shall be determined through *engagement\** with *interested stakeholders\**.

### **HCV 1.6. Other Sites of Concentration of Endemic, Rare\*, Threatened or Endangered Species\***

#### Identification method

This *HCV\** type represents areas with high concentration of *rare species\** (including temporary and/or seasonal) and/or separate locations of *rare species\* habitats\**, when their survival crucially depends on the considered site, also including:

- 1 and more species having CR status (Critically Endangered) or EN status (Endangered) in the IUCN classification (<http://www.iucnredlist.org/technical-documents/categories-and-criteria>), included in IUCN Red Books of Russia or a subject of the Russian Federation, or
- 5 and more *rare species\** having VU status (Vulnerable), or
- 10 and more species with other statuses.

Other *rare species\** and their habitats shall be identified and conserved in accordance with *Criterion\** 6.4.

To obtain data on *habitats\** of *rare species\** and their concentration, *The Organization\** shall send a request to the government authority in charge of the Red Book of a particular region, as well as to research institutions and nature conservation organizations conducting studies (or possessing data) in the region. Links to the information regarding Red Books of the subjects of the Russian Federation are available at FSC Russia website ([https://ru.fsc.org/ru-ru/for\\_zs/lvpc/sistema\\_zashity\\_redkih\\_vidov](https://ru.fsc.org/ru-ru/for_zs/lvpc/sistema_zashity_redkih_vidov)). Also, data on the *habitats\** of plants listed in the Russian Red Book are available in the publication *Rare Forest Plants of Russia* (Titova, Kobyakov, 2014). In addition, see the HCVF website, <http://hcvf.ru/>.

#### Conservation\* measures

For the majority of forest-dwelling *rare species\** of vascular plants, mosses, lichens, fungi and small animals, it is essential to prohibit any types of logging and *infrastructure\** development in the identified *habitats\**. For some species it is necessary to prohibit the above activity in key sites and modify management regime at adjacent areas (for example, in order to eliminate disturbance factors, changes of microclimate etc.). In some cases recommendations on *conservation\** measures *can\** be available in articles about relevant species in the Russian Red Data Books of the Russian Federation and/or Red Data Books of the subjects of the Russian Federation. Also, recommendations on *conservation\** measures are given in the publication *Rare Forest Plants of Russia* (Titova, Kobyakov, 2014). Whether the *conservation\** measures in the aforementioned sources are not described, described not in sufficient detail and not clearly enough, or *The Organization\** considers it expedient to apply other *conservation\** measures, consultations with *interested stakeholders\** shall be held.

### **HCV 1.7. Wildlife habitat features\* (including seasonal)**

This type refers to areas, which are important for maintaining *populations\** of animals, including rare and game animals, during breeding and raising of offspring, for compensating the lack of

mineral food, for winter preparations, for winter hibernation and survival during the period of deep snow and shortage of food, for escaping from enemies and during other critically important periods. Such areas *can*\* be *HCV*\* 5.

Wildlife *habitats*\* (including seasonal), alongside those mentioned above, *can*\* include capercaillie leks, areas along watercourses inhabited by beavers, which are identified based on the forest inventory materials and field surveys, including those referring to relevant SPFH, as well as other specific regional *habitats*\*, for example, dwarf pine shrub, horsetail forest, rock outcrops, wintering and nesting grounds and others. *The Organization*\* *shall*\* request data on *habitat features*\* from the governmental bodies in charge of protection and use of wildlife and water biological resources of a region, as well as from research institutions and nature conservation organizations that conduct research (or possess data) related to *habitat features*\* in the region.

Table 6. Wildlife *habitat features*\* belonging to this subtype of *HCV*\*

Types of wildlife <i>habitat features</i> *	Identification method	<i>Conservation</i> * measures
Spawning grounds of valuable fish species	Areas bordering the rivers for which there are data regarding spawning of <i>rare</i> or valuable fish <i>species</i> *. The actual status is to be clarified on the basis of official sources and other available materials, including scientific publications. This <i>HCV</i> * <i>shall</i> * include officially identified protective forest strips of spawning grounds, fish conservation zones, fishery reserve zones, as well as at least 200 meter-wide forest strips along spawning rivers identified on the basis of other sources	Timber harvest is banned, with the exception of thinning of young stands and sanitary cuts. <i>Conservation</i> * measures <i>may</i> * be amended based on the results of consultations with <i>interested stakeholders</i> *
Natural leaks	Exposed rock deposits (litomorphic leaks) or streams (hydromorphic leaks) with high content of substances and elements needed for hoofed mammals used by animals. The actual presence is validated by the data or field surveys, interviews with hunters, official sources, publications etc.	<i>HCV</i> * area includes the nearby forest stand within a 200-500-m radius where clearcutting is not done. Selective cutting with intensity up to 30% is permissible only when the snow cover is present. Upper load sites and timber hauling roads are built not closer than 250 m from <i>HCV</i> *; forest roads are located not closer than 1 km from <i>HCV</i> *. <i>Conservation</i> * measures <i>may</i> * be amended according to the results of consultations with <i>interested stakeholders</i> *

Types of wildlife <i>habitat features</i> *	Identification method	<i>Conservation</i> * measures
Places of seasonal concentration of hoofed mammals	Such sites have regional specifics. <i>HCV</i> * is identified based on inquiries to <i>legally competent</i> * government bodies, research institutions and hunters' data. The actual presence is validated according to hunters' data and official sources	For some regions regional lists and <i>conservation</i> * measures are developed. In other cases <i>conservation</i> * measures are determined depending on specific regional characteristics based on consultations with <i>interested stakeholders</i> *

For some regions regional methods for identifying wildlife *habitat features*\* are developed (*Metodicheskie ukazaniya...*, 2010 and others). If a regional method for identifying *HCV*\* 1.7 is available, it *shall*\* be used by *The Organization*\* when identifying *HCV*\*. See also the HCVF website, <http://hcvf.ru/>.

## HCV 2. Landscape\*-level ecosystems\* and mosaics

***Intact forest landscapes*\* and large *landscape*\*-level *ecosystems*\* and *ecosystem*\* mosaics that are significant at global, national or regional levels, and that contain viable *populations*\* of the great majority of the naturally occurring species in natural patterns of distribution and abundance.**

### ***HCV 2.1. Intact Forest Landscapes*\* (IFL)**

#### *Identification method*

*IFL*\* are *landscapes*\* in the current forest zone that are whole and natural almost entirely unaffected by human activities. These are territories with an area greater than 50 thousand hectares and a minimal width of 10 km (measured as the diameter of a circle entirely inscribed within the territory's boundaries). The size and condition of such territories\* enable to support viable *populations*\* of most typical for those territories species and keep most of the territory free of edge effects. Such *landscapes*\* can\* consist of a mosaic of diverse *ecosystems*\* (including treeless) and characterized by a natural fire regime.

The method of *IFL*\* identification is described in a number of publications (Yaroshenko et al., 2001; Aksenov et al., 2003). The mapping of *IFL*\* for entire Russia was first completed in 2000 (Aksenov et al., 2003). Since then the information was periodically updated for a number of regions. The full update for the all territory of Russia was done in 2013 (*Malonarushennye lesnye territorii...*, 2015). The *IFL*\* boundaries as of 2013 (and 2000) are available at the Russian HCVF website (<http://hcvf.ru/maps>), as well as some later updates of *IFL*\* boundaries for a certain areas; the information is updated on a regular basis.

#### *Conservation*\* measures

With regard to *IFL*\* *The Organization*\* *shall*\* comply with all the requirements listed below:

- Throughout an *IFL*\* located within the *managed area or areas*\* all types of logging and *infrastructure*\* development are prohibited before *conservation*\* measures for *IFL*\* are identified and agreed with *interested stakeholders*\* and the *sustainable timber harvest level*\* is recalculated according to *Indicator*\* 5.2.2.
- It is prohibited to reduce the *IFL*\* below 50 000 ha threshold as a result of management activities. This means in all cases, irrespective of the total area of a particular *IFL*\*, the total area of parts where management activities are prohibited *shall not*\* be less than 50 000 ha.

When making calculation in such a case, the whole *IFL\** is taken into account, regardless of which portion of the *IFL\** is located within the *managed area or areas\**.

- *IFL\** fragmentation as a result of *The Organization's\** activities is unacceptable, i.e. the splitting *IFL\** into two and more parts if the area of the remaining fragments constitute more than 5% of the original *IFL\**.

*The Organization\** shall\* choose one of the three options given in Table 7, while ensuring that all the following conditions shall\* be met at the same time:

- If the *IFL\** is assessed for *The Organization\** that is already certified under the Russian FSC Standard, then the *IFL\*s conservation\** threshold is calculated relatively to the area of *IFL\** that existed as of the date of issue of the FM certificate (FM/COC).
- In case a new *managed area or areas\** containing *IFL\** is/are added to the *Management Unit\**, the assessment of *IFL\*s conservation\** threshold according to Table 7 shall\* be repeated. By the choice of *The Organization\**, this assessment may\* be made only for the new *managed area or areas\** added to the *Management Unit\** or for the entire *Management Unit\** within the new boundaries.
- *The Organization\** may\* apply *IFL\* conservation\** thresholds step by step, i.e. after having undertaken additional efforts for *IFL\* conservation\**, it may\* at any time change “minimum 80%” threshold to “minimum 50%” threshold and further down to “minimum 30%”.

Table 7. *The Organization's\** options for *IFL\* conservation\**

Undertaken actions	<b>Conservation* threshold for <i>IFL*</i></b> <b>(the <i>IFL*s</i> part where management activities are prohibited)</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <i>The Organization*</i>, through <i>engagement*</i> with <i>interested stakeholders*</i>, made the zoning of <i>IFL*</i> based on the principles of zoning described below and identified those <i>IFL*s</i> parts where management activities may* be carried out and those for which “strict conservation” is set as a <i>conservation*</i> measure (see Table 5).</li> </ul>	<p><i>IFL* conservation*</i> threshold is minimum <b>80%</b> of the total <i>IFL*</i> within the <i>managed area* or areas*</i></p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <i>The Organization*</i>, through <i>engagement*</i> with <i>interested stakeholders*</i> made the zoning of <i>IFL*</i> based on the principles of zoning defined below and identified those <i>IFL*s</i> parts where management activities may* be carried out and those for which “strict conservation” is set as a <i>conservation*</i> measure (see Table 5).</li> <li>- In <i>IFL*s</i> parts where management activities are permitted, forestry operations and <i>forest regeneration*</i> activities are conducted only in a manner listed below, thus ensuring partial maintenance of the <i>IFL* environmental value*</i></li> </ul>	<p><i>IFL* conservation*</i> threshold is minimum <b>50%</b> of the total <i>IFL*</i> within the <i>managed area or areas*</i></p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <i>The Organization*</i>, through <i>engagement*</i> with <i>interested stakeholders*</i> made <i>IFL*</i> zoning based on the principles of zoning defined below, has identified those <i>IFL*s</i> parts where management activities may* be carried out and those for which “strict conservation” is set as a <i>conservation*</i> measures (see Table 5).</li> <li>- In <i>IFL*s</i> parts where management activities are permitted, forestry operations and <i>forest regeneration*</i> activities are conducted only in a manner listed below, thus ensuring partial maintenance of the <i>IFL* environmental value*</i>.</li> <li>- <i>The Organization*</i> undertakes measures (it may* also initiate the relevant process) in order to assign a legal <i>protection*</i> status in long run for the strict conservation part of <i>IFL*</i> within its concession area (<i>PNA*</i>, PF, NFH and others, within borders, agreed with <i>interested stakeholders*</i>)</li> </ul>	<p><i>IFL* conservation*</i> threshold is minimum <b>30%</b> of the total <i>IFL*</i> within the <i>managed area or areas*</i></p> <p>This rule may* apply only if the issue of assigning a <i>long-term* conservation*</i> status was already settled (<i>PNA*</i> was established, PF status was assigned and so on) or if the area was</p>

	legally reserved for the appropriate purpose
--	--

Identification of *IFL*\*'s parts to be excluded from management activities (for which *conservation*\* measures “strict conservation” is set, see Table 5) *shall*\* be done by zoning based on *conservation*\* *value*\*. The zoning *shall*\* be done as special research to identify *IFL*\*'s parts having the greatest importance from the *biodiversity*\* *conservation*\* standpoint, migration corridors, environmental protection and others, namely:

- The data *shall*\* be applied, which include data on PF, SPFH, IBAR, *WL*\*, spawning grounds for valuable fish species, valley ecosystems complexes (see below), existing and *candidate PNA*\*, KBT, TTNRU or plans of their establishment, location of river basins, as well as the data (including maps) from publications on other identified types of *HCV*\*, if they are available for the area under consideration.
- Identification of *IFL*\*'s parts to be excluded from management activities *shall*\* be based on *conservation*\* of environmental and social *values*\* and consider potential social *consequences*\*, but not based on the convenience of conducting forestry operations.

For the Far Eastern Federal District (FEFD) and Siberian Federal District (SFD) of the Russian Federation regional methods for *IFL*\* zoning according to environmental *values*\* are developed (see short summaries in Annex D2 and D3). The former method of the regional *IFL*\* zoning *shall*\* be used for the area of the FEFD, while the latter one is recommended to be used for the SFD.

In *IFL*\*'s parts where management activities are permitted, only best available technologies *shall*\* be applied ensuring maximum preservation of the physical environment in forests, biological diversity and mimicking the natural forest dynamics. Such timber harvesting technologies *may*\* be integrated step-by-step, depending on the applicable legislation and capabilities of an individual enterprise, but *The Organization*\* *shall*\* approve and follow the program for introducing such practices and technologies for a period of maximum 5 years.

Most preferable logging methods are group selection cuts and group shelterwood cut (gap felling).

For clearcuts and shelterwood cuts within the *IFL*\* the following restrictions *shall*\* be observed:

- Either maximum width of a clearcut *shall not*\* exceed 200 m or part of the forest stand *shall*\* be retained in the form of strips or patches, making up at least 20% of the total harvest area and more or less evenly distributed over the harvest area.
- If any *landscape*\* borders are present nearby the harvest areas, the cutting shape *shall*\* follow these border.
- clearcut and shelterwood areas of any age *shall not*\* directly border each other, but *shall*\* be separated by at least 150-meter wide forest buffer strips or other natural vegetation.

Otherwise, through *engagement*\* with *interested stakeholders*\* other *conservation*\* measures *shall*\* be developed that ensure partial maintenance of the *environmental value*\* of *IFL*\*, which *may*\* include guidelines on logging operations, *infrastructure*\* development, as well as planning and maintaining the ecological network for all managed parts of *IFL*\*.

*Forest regeneration*\* in harvested areas within the managed parts of *IFL*\* *shall*\* be based on natural regeneration. Planting of forest species is permissible only when natural regeneration for some reasons is difficult or impossible.

However, the possibility of the zoning of *IFL*\* and identification of *IFL*\* parts where management activities are permissible is available only until January 01 2022. After this date newly certified *IFL*\* *shall*\* be completely excluded from management activities (i.e. “strict conservation” will be established for 100% of the area).

Agreements between *The Organizations*\* and *interested stakeholders*\*, as well as public declarations of *The Organizations*\* transparently agreed to with *interested stakeholders*\*, made before the standard becomes effective, remain effective during the whole period stipulated in them, even if the relevant thresholds and timelines for *IFL*\* *conservation*\* do not match with those indicated in this section.

In individual cases, upon consent given by *interested stakeholders\**, it is possible to depart from activities, characteristics and/or timelines indicated in this section of the Annex. All such departures *shall\** be either fixed in a public agreement between *The Organization\** and *interested stakeholders\** or in *The Organization's\** public declaration explicitly agreed with *interested stakeholders\**.

## **HCV 2.2. Intact Forest Tracts (IFT)**

### Identification method

Tracts of natural forests (with an area less than 50 000 ha, but greater than 100 ha; the minimal size *can\** vary depending on the region and IFT type) that avoided significant human impact and that changed over the course of many generations of major tree species primarily under the effect of natural processes. The minimal size and the identification method of IFT *can\** vary among the regions depending on local specifics. The IFT *may\** be formed by both *forest\** and *treeless ecosystems\**, if the latter are also intact (*forest\* ecosystems\* shall\** prevail). It is allowable to include some disturbed patches into IFT (not more than 5% of the total area) if this significantly reduces the identity of the IFT's boundary. Due to natural features, IFT in river valleys *can\** have a stretched, twisted shape.

Presently regional methods of IFT identification are developed for northwestern regions of Russia: Murmansk Oblast, Vologda Oblast, Arkhangelsk Oblast, Leningrad Oblast and the Republic of Karelia (*Sokhranenie tsennykh...*, 2011; *Vydelenie i sokhranenie ...*, 2010); Primorsky Krai, Jewish Autonomous Oblast and south of Khabarovsk Krai (*Vydelenie lesov...*, 2006; *Vydelenie lesov...*, 2011; *Devstvennye lesa...*, 2000; *Metodicheskoe posobie...*, 2012); Kostroma Oblast (*Landshafty i ekologicheskaya set'...*, 2013); Angara region – the areas in Irkutsk Oblast and Krasnoyarsk Krai along the Angara River (*Dopolneniya k prakticheskomu rukovodstvu...*, 2011; [http://new.transparentworld.ru/f/hcvf/angara/hcvf\\_angara.zip](http://new.transparentworld.ru/f/hcvf/angara/hcvf_angara.zip)); the Republic of Komi (*Porydok provedeniya...*, 2001; *Devstvennye lesa ...*, 2004; *Lesa vysokoy...*, 2008); and Perm Krai (Slashchev, Sannikov, 2011).

IFT *shall\** be identified by *The Organization\** only if a regional identification method is developed and available at Russia HCV website (<http://hcvf.ru>) and/or FSC Russia (<https://ru.fsc.org/ru-ru>). The list of methods is regularly updated and enlarged.

For the Far Eastern Federal District *The Organization\** *shall\** identify IFTs excluded from management activities (*conservation\** measure “strict conservation”) in accordance with *Methodological Approaches and Recommendations on Zoning of Intact Forest Landscapes and Tracts in the South of the Far East*. The process of identification is similar to the identification of IFL\*s with *conservation\** measure “strict conservation” (see Annex D2).

Conservation\* measures for IFT *shall\** normally ensure that all types of logging and forest *infrastructure\** development are excluded. Other *conservation\** measures for IFT *can\** be given in relevant publications (see above). Whether *conservation\** measures are not described, described not in sufficient detail and not clearly enough, or if *The Organization\** considers it expedient to apply other *conservation\** measures, consultations with *interested stakeholders\** *shall\** be held.

## **HCV 2.3. Valley complexes in river basins unaffected by human activity**

### Identification method

Stretched areas (minimum 30 km from the source of a river measured along the watercourse) without man-made *infrastructure\** or signs of industrial logging within the basins. Within the such basins or their large upper parts there *shall\** be no populated areas, roads, including timber hauling roads and disturbed sites unambiguously interpreted as the *consequences\** of harvesting. The wildfire disturbance of the area, if this did not affect vegetation in the floodplains and slope terraces, *may\** be ignored. The valley complex is being identified for comparatively wide floodplains (from 200 meters in the major part of the site; some narrowing is locally permitted). Regional identification methods have been developed for the southern part of the Russian Far East (*Vydelenie lesov...*, 2006; *Vydelenie lesov...*, 2011).



This *HCV\** subtype *shall\** be identified by *The Organization\** only if a regional identification method is in a place and available at HCVF Russia website (<http://hcvf.ru/>) and/or FSC Russia (<https://ru.fsc.org/ru-ru>).

#### Conservation measures

*Conservation\** measures for this *HCV\** subtype *shall\** normally ensure that all types of logging and forest *infrastructure\** development are excluded. Other *conservation\** measures *can\** be provided in relevant publications. Whether *conservation\** measures are not described, described not in sufficient detail and not clearly enough, or *The Organization\** considers it expedient to apply other *conservation\** measures, *The Organization\** *shall\** hold consultations with *interested stakeholders\**.

### **HCV 2.4. Intact wetland tracts (IWT)**

#### Identification method

This *HCV\** subtype refers to natural wetland complexes that avoided significant human impact and develop under the effect of natural processes. IWT include wetlands and other *ecosystems\** if they also appear intact (wetland *ecosystems\** *shall\** prevail). The minimal area of identified IWA *can\** significantly vary among the regions and depends on the occurrence and degree of preservation of wetlands in a particular area. Regional identification methods are developed for Murmansk, Vologda, Arkhangelsk, Leningrad Oblasts and the Republic of Karelia (*Sokhranenie tsennykh...*, 2011; *Vyyavlenie i sokhranenie...*, 2010).

This *HCV\** subtype *shall\** be identified by *The Organization\** only if a regional identification method is developed and available at HCVF Russia website (<http://hcvf.ru/>) and/or FSC Russia (<https://ru.fsc.org/ru-ru>).

#### Conservation measures

*Conservation\** measures for this *HCV\** subtype *shall\** normally ensure that all types of logging and forest *infrastructure\** development are excluded. Other *conservation\** measures *can\** be indicated in relevant publications. Whether *conservation\** measures are not described, described not in sufficient detail and not clearly enough, or *The Organization\** considers it expedient to apply other *conservation\** measures, *The Organization\** *shall\** conduct consultations with *interested stakeholders\**.

### **HCV 3. Rare ecosystems\* and habitats\***

#### **Rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems\*, habitats\* or refugia\*.**

#### Identification method

Rare and threatened *ecosystems\** are *ecosystems\**, which are rare (i.e. occupy an insignificant portion of a particular *landscape\**, region, natural zone or on the global scale) due to various reasons (for example, unique natural and historical processes or as a result of human impact). Owing to this, rare *ecosystems\** are normally vulnerable, i.e. *can\** be completely extinct (are under *threat\**) as a result of a wide range of destructive factors and even insignificant disturbances. As *HCV\** rare *forest\* ecosystems\** (communities) *shall\** be identified and preserved, as well as other rare *ecosystems\** outside forested areas, which *can\** be disturbed by management activities (for example, rare bog and steppe communities).

Small-size rare *habitats\** *shall\** be conserved as part of *habitat\** management (*Criterion\** 6.6), for example, through identifying *habitat features (key habitats)\**.

There is no a unified list of rare *ecosystems\** applicable to all of Russia. When evaluating the *managed area* or *areas\** with regard to this type of *HCV\**, *The Organization\** *shall\** identify at least rare *forest\* ecosystems\** specified in Table 8. *The Organization\** *may\** also identify other *HCV\* 3*.

For some regions regional methods for identification of HCV\* 3 were developed: Murmansk, Vologda, Arkhangelsk, Leningrad Oblasts and the Republic of Karelia (*Sokhranenie tsennykh...*, 2011; *Vyyavlenie i sokhranenie...*, 2010); Primorsky Krai, Jewish Autonomous Oblast and south of Khabarovsk Krai (*Vydelenie lesov...*, 2006; *Vydelenie lesov ...*, 2011; *Metodicheskoe ukazaniya*, 2010; Krestov, Verkholat, 2003; *Metodicheskoe posobie...*, 2012); Kostroma Oblast (*Landshafty i ekologicheskaya set'...*, 2013); Perm Krai (Slashev, Sannikov, 2011); Kirov Oblast (<http://www.transparentworld.ru/ru/environment/hcvf/kirov/>); the Republic of Karelia, Leningrad, Pskov and Novgorod Oblasts (*Vyyavlenie i obsledovanie...*, 2009); Siberia (*Zelenaya kniga Sibiri*, 1996; <http://www.sbras.ru/win/elbib/bio/green/>); the Republic of Bashkortostan (*Ekologicheskaya set'...*, 2005). When identifying HCV\* in these regions, *The Organization\* shall\** consider the findings of these studies (see also the HCVF website, <http://hcvf.ru/>).

To obtain additional data on rare *forest\* ecosystems\**, *The Organization\* shall\** send requests to research institutions and nature conservation organizations that make research (or possess data) for this region.

#### Conservation\* measures

For all types of rare communities, *conservation\** measures *shall\** ensure normally that all types of logging and *forest\* infrastructure\** development are excluded. Other *conservation\** measures *can\** be specified in relevant publications. If *conservation\** measures are not described, described not in sufficient detail and not clearly enough, or *The Organization\** considers it expedient to apply other *conservation\** measures, *The Organization\* shall\** conduct consultations with *interested stakeholders\**.

Table 8. Rare *forest\** communities belonging to this type of HCV\*

Type of rare community	Brief description	Known examples
HCV* 3.1. <i>Forest*</i> communities with <i>rare trees species*</i>	The tree canopy contains <i>rare tree species*</i> included in the Red Books of the Russian Federation and/or the subject of Russian Federation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– forests with Japanese yew (<i>Taxus cuspidata</i>, southern Russian Far East);</li> <li>– forests with <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> var. <i>cretacea</i> (Voronezh and Belgorod Oblast);</li> <li>– forests with Crimean pine (<i>Pinus nigra</i> subsp. <i>pallasiana</i>) (Krasnodar Krai)</li> </ul>
HCV* 3.2. <i>Forest*</i> communities where structural elements are formed by <i>rare species*</i>	<i>Forest*</i> communities, in which <i>rare species*</i> form the sublayer of the forest stand or dominate in shrub, grass or moss and lichen layers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– spruce (dark coniferous) forest with <i>Bergenia</i> (Primorsky Krai);</li> <li>– forests with <i>Ruscus colchicus</i> (Krasnodar Krai);</li> <li>– forests with <i>Sibiraea altaiensis</i> (Altai Krai)</li> </ul>
HCV* 3.3. <i>Forest*</i> communities where the tree canopy is represented by ecologically contrasting species	<i>Forest*</i> communities formed by ecologically contrasting species growing, as a rule, outside of their native range	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– spruce forest with hornbeam (<i>Carpinus</i>, Primorsky Krai)</li> </ul>
HCV* 3.4. Communities that are typical for the region, but having a reduced native range under the	<i>Forest*</i> communities that had originally a wider range of occurrence and currently rare primarily as a result of management activities. Within the core of the	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– larch forests (the stand composition consists of 5 and more larch trees per each 10 trees on the average) in Arkhangelsk Oblast;</li> <li>– forests with Manchurian fir (<i>Abies holophylla</i>) (Primorsky</li> </ul>

Type of rare community	Brief description	Known examples
impact of destructive factors	native range they have declined or become completely extinct and are preserved in their <i>natural condition</i> * only in isolated places	Kray); – natural floodplain forests; – noble hardwood and coniferous-noble hardwood forests (Central European Russia)
HCV 3.5. <i>Forest</i> * communities associated with rare types of <i>habitats</i> *	Forests associated with rare <i>habitats</i> * (limestone and chalk outcrops, rocky outcrops, dunes, floodplain <i>ecosystems</i> * and valley complexes, sea coasts and others)	– dune, rock and other dry pine forests (Vologda and Leningrad Oblasts)
HCV 3.6. Extrazonal (located outside the native range of occurrence) communities	Communities located at the extreme periphery of their native range of occurrence or isolated from the main part of it	– mountain tundra in the forest zone (northern part of the Republic of Karelia, Murmansk Oblast); – fragments of noble hardwood and coniferous-noble hardwood forests in the boreal zone (Arkhangelsk, Vologda, Leningrad and Kostroma Oblasts)

#### **HCV\* 4. Critical ecosystem services\***

**Basic ecosystem services\* in critical\* situations, including protection of water catchments and control of erosion of vulnerable soils and slopes.**

##### Identification method

This HCV\* type is well covered by the Russian legislation as certain categories of protective forests (PF) and SPFH (see Table 4). Identification of additional HCV\* 4 sites is not required.

##### **HCV\* 4.1. Forests of high water protection value**

This HCV\* subtype includes the following categories of PF:

- forests located in water protection zones;
- forests located in the first and second belts of sanitary protection zones of drinking water and industrial and domestic water supply;
- prohibited forest belts along the *water bodies*\*;
- ribbon-like pine forests;
- as well as the following types of SPFH:
- protective forest belts along and dividing crests and watershed lines.

##### **HCV\* 4.2. Forests of high erosion control value**

This HCV\* subtype includes the following categories of PF:

- state protective forest strips;
- erosion control forests;
- forests located in deserts, semi-deserts, forest-steppe, forest-tundra, steppe and mountains;

as well as the following types of SPFH:

- riverbank protection, soil protective forest areas along water bodies, slopes of gullies;
- forest edges bordered by treeless areas;
- forest strips in the mountains along the upper forest range bordered by treeless areas;
- small forest patches located in treeless areas; and
- forests on steep mountain slopes.

Additional SPFH categories, which are not mentioned in the current version of the Forest Inventory Instruction, but included in the forest inventory materials *may*\* be also classified as these *HCV*\* subtypes.

The main source of information for *HCV*\* 4 are forest planning documents (district-level forest management plans (*lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament lesnichestva*), forest plans (*lesnoy plan*) of the subjects of the Russian Federation, forest concession management plans (*proyekt osvoeniya lesov*), forest inventory materials). Some of these documents may be found at websites of regional authorities in charge of forest management. In addition, the HCVF Russia website has a regularly updated section with a selection of these materials (<http://hcvf.ru/dataBase>).

#### Conservation measures

In general, *conservation*\* measures for *HCV*\* 4 coincide with those required for PF and SPFH and specified in relevant normative documents. In some cases, it is important to oversee whether thinning, forest sanitary activities and other measures are prescribed appropriately. Consultations with *interested stakeholders*\* regarding *conservation*\* measures for *HCV*\* 4 are not mandatory.

### **HCV\* 5. Community needs**

**Sites and resources fundamental for satisfying the basic necessities of *local communities*\* or *indigenous peoples*\* (for livelihoods, health, nutrition, water etc.), identified through *engagement*\* with these communities and *Indigenous Peoples*\*.**

#### Identification method

Information for *HCV*\* 5 identification *shall*\* be mainly sourced through *engagement*\* with *affected stakeholders*\* and *interested stakeholders*\* for identification of sites and resources, which are of special (see in *criteria*\* 3.5 and 4.7) and/or fundamental ecological, economic *value*\* for *local communities*\* or *Indigenous Peoples*\*. Experts *may*\* be also engaged in *HCV*\* 5 identification. Partly the information *can*\* be available in documents on forest and territorial planning and land use (forest plan (*lesnoy plan*), district-level forest management plans (*lesokhozyaystvennyy reglament*), forest stand maps and detailed forest (*planshet*) maps, forest taxation records, territorial planning schemes etc.), and topographic and thematic maps. Also, the information *can*\* be received from specialized government, non-government and research organizations, local self-governments.

The list of *HCV*\* 5 subtypes, given in Table 9, *shall*\* be viewed as preliminary: in the course of *HCV*\* 5 identification, the list *may*\* be extended or shortened (for example, if a particular *HCV*\* subtype is not present within the *managed area or areas*\*). Most of *HCV*\* 5 subtypes occur everywhere in Russia. Some of the objects have limited occurrence.

Some items listed as *HCV*\* 5 *can*\* have the status of PF or SPFH (see Table 5). When identifying *HCV*\* 5, the presence of at least the subtypes listed in Table 9 *shall*\* be assessed.

A more detailed procedure for identification of *HCV*\* 5, including the identification method, the list of required information and the list of *affected stakeholders*\* and *interested stakeholders*\* is provided in publications: *Metodicheskie rekomendatsii po vydeleniyu lesov, imeyushchikh vazhnoe sotsial'noe i kul'turnoe znachenie* (2014) and *Rekomendatsii po sotsial'nym aspektam sertifikatsii po scheme Lesnogo popechitel'skogo soveta FSC* (2009).

#### Conservation measures



*Conservation\** measures for different *HCV\* 5* subtypes are given in Table 9. *Affected stakeholders\** or *interested stakeholders\** *can\** propose other *conservation\** measures. If particular sites had the status of *PNA\**, *TTNRU*, *SPFH*, *PF* or other categories with legally regulated land use, the *conservation\** measures established by *The Organization\** for these sites *shall\** be at least as strict as those stipulated by law. *Conservation\** measures *shall\** consider specific features of each type of the utilized resources and guarantee that productivity of the resource will not decline as a result of management activities. Also *The Organization\** *shall\** ensure preservation of access ways to the identified *HCV\* 5* and other related social infrastructure (cabins, wild bees nests etc.).

Table 9. *HCV\* 5* Subtypes

<b><i>HCV* 5</i> Subtype</b>	<b><i>Conservation*</i> measures</b>
<i>HCV* 5.1. Areas of collecting berries, mushrooms and other wild-growing plants</i>	<p>They <i>can*</i> have the status of <i>PF</i> (nut-harvesting zones, forest fruit plants), <i>SPFH</i> (Siberian pine and Korean pine forests).</p> <p>Destruction of medicinal and edible plants and mushrooms as a result of logging or forest <i>infrastructure*</i> development is minimized or avoided, the damage to fruit trees and shrubs, trees supporting lianas, etc. is also avoided.</p> <p>With a few exceptions (bilberry (<i>Vaccinium myrtillus</i>), raspberry (<i>Rubus idaeus</i>) forest types, etc.), clearcutting <i>shall not*</i> be performed, while selective cutting is preferably made in winter time.</p> <p><i>Affected stakeholders*</i> and <i>interested stakeholders*</i> <i>can*</i> propose other <i>conservation*</i> measures</p>
<i>HCV* 5.2. Hunting areas</i>	<p><i>Conservation*</i> measures <i>shall*</i> contribute to <i>protection*/restoration*</i> of the <i>population*</i> of game animals and preservation of the hunting infrastructure (as an example, a logging ban within a 500-m distance from a hunting cabin, a logging ban within a 100-m distance from hunting trails).</p> <p><i>Conservation*</i> measures <i>may*</i> include harvesting restrictions in forest types that could be of critical significance for particular game species (for example, old-growth fir forests for musk deer) or seasonal ban on forest operations in order to exclude the disturbance factor in critical periods of animal life.</p> <p><i>Affected stakeholders*</i> and <i>interested stakeholders*</i> <i>can*</i> propose other <i>conservation*</i> measures</p>
<i>HCV* 5.3. Fishing grounds</i>	<p>In most cases, fishing grounds and their protection zones coincide with water protection zones or other categories of <i>PF</i> or <i>SPFH</i> identified along <i>water bodies*</i>, as well as areas identified in accordance with the applicable water legislation and/or fishing regulations. If the status of the site (for example, water protection zone, fishery reserves, sites prohibited for extraction/fishing of aquatic biological resources as prescribed by laws <i>On Fishing and Conservation of Aquatic Biological Resources</i>, <i>Fishing Rules for Fishery Basins</i>) does not regulate management activities, <i>conservation*</i> measures are established based on consultations with <i>affected stakeholders*</i> and <i>interested stakeholders*</i>. <i>Conservation*</i> measures <i>shall*</i> ensure preservation of both, resources and fishing infrastructure (as an example, a logging ban within a 200-m distance from a fisher cabin; a logging ban in the proximity of traditional fishing places)</p>

HCV* 5 Subtype	Conservation* measures
<p>HCV* 5.4. Pastures, haymaking and plough land</p>	<p>A ban on some logging types (for example, clearcutting and high intensive selective cutting) and timber harvest during a particular season in forests used for cattle grazing.</p> <p>Also a ban <i>may*</i> be introduced on arrangement of timber storage sites and other elements of <i>infrastructure*</i> in forest areas designated for haymaking, grazing and arable lands.</p> <p><i>Affected stakeholders*</i> and <i>interested stakeholders*</i> <i>can*</i> propose other <i>conservation*</i> measures</p>
<p>HCV* 5.5. Honey plants, apiaries, wild bee nests</p>	<p>They <i>can*</i> have the status of SPFH (honey-yielding forest sites). Besides, in beekeeping regions it is recommended to introduce a ban on logging honey plants and, in case of their large share in the tree stand (30% and greater), a ban on any logging in the corresponding sub-compartments (<i>vydels</i>), a ban or harvest restriction around forest apiaries, a ban on placement of timber storage sites and construction of temporary cabins on forest meadows.</p> <p><i>Affected stakeholders*</i> and <i>interested stakeholders*</i> <i>can*</i> propose other <i>conservation*</i> measures</p>
<p>HCV* 5.6. Sites for harvesting of firewood and construction materials for local people needs</p>	<p>If forests that are free of lease and/or accessible (not too remote) are not available, upon agreement with <i>affected stakeholders*</i>, it is recommended either to designate sites that are used by local people to harvest firewood or construction wood, where industrial harvesting will be limited in proximity of the populated areas (preferably within a 1-km distance), or to make an agreement with the local authorities to supply firewood and construction materials to local people on preferential terms</p>
<p>HCV* 5.7. Sites for extraction of materials for traditional handicrafts (birch bark, materials for cooperage, basket osier, etc.)</p>	<p>Usually additional <i>conservation*</i> measures are not required if they are not proposed by <i>affected stakeholders*</i> or <i>interested stakeholders*</i>. As an example, <i>interested stakeholders*</i> or <i>affected stakeholders*</i> <i>can*</i> ask for permission to harvest some materials (for example, extraction of birch bark at harvest areas allocated for timber harvest in birch forests) under condition if such activities are agreed with <i>The Organization*</i></p>
<p>HCV* 5.8. Sources of drinking water (springs wells and rivers), and mineral wells</p>	<p>In most cases, these sites are identified as PF or SPFH. The regime set for PF or SPFH, if such exist, is usually sufficient. It is possible to expand the established protective zones and/or determine stricter <i>conservation*</i> measures if proposed so by <i>affected stakeholders*</i> or <i>interested stakeholders*</i></p>
<p>HCV* 5.9. Green and park forests zones, urban forests, forests nearby settlements</p>	<p>In most cases, these sites are identified as PF or SPFH. However, for a number of populated areas they <i>can*</i> be not designated as such (new settlements and those having no status of populated areas, but used for temporary or permanent residence, etc.). In these cases, to define the <i>HCV*</i> areas upon the proposal from <i>affected stakeholders*</i>, <i>The Organization*</i> <i>may*</i> use the same normatives as for other populated areas (protection zone at least within a 1-km distance from the borders of the populated area).</p> <p>It is possible to change <i>conservation*</i> measures (introduce additional restrictions) for the entire area or its particular parts upon the initiative from <i>affected stakeholders*</i> or <i>interested stakeholders*</i>. For example, all types of harvesting <i>may*</i> be banned,</p>

HCV* 5 Subtype	Conservation* measures
	apart from the removal of fallen and dangerous trees along permanent paths and skiing trails
HCV* 5.10. Traditional leisure areas, tourist and recreation areas, natural sight-seeing sites, ecological trails and routes	They <i>can*</i> have the status of <i>PNA*</i> , PF or SPFH; in this case, <i>conservation*</i> measures are determined by relevant regulations. Also, <i>conservation*</i> measures <i>can*</i> be proposed by <i>affected stakeholders*</i> or <i>interested stakeholders*</i> . For example, management activities <i>may*</i> be banned within a 100-m distance on the both sides of the trails, routes, and at a distance of 300 m from permanent camping grounds
HCV* 5.11. Forests of scientific significance (plantations, historical planting)	They <i>can*</i> have the status of <i>PNA*</i> , PF or SPFH. It is possible to change <i>conservation*</i> measures (introduce additional restrictions) for the entire area or its parts upon the proposal from <i>affected stakeholders*</i> or <i>interested stakeholders*</i>
HCV* 5.12. Territories of traditional natural resource use by <i>Indigenous Peoples*</i>	They <i>can*</i> have the status of TTNRU established by the decision of governments or local self-governments. Representatives of <i>Indigenous Peoples*</i> <i>may*</i> propose other (stricter) <i>conservation*</i> measures for particular parts or the whole TTNRU. <i>Conservation*</i> measures for TTNRU are determined through <i>engagement*</i> with representatives of <i>Indigenous Peoples*</i>

#### HCV\* 6. Cultural values

**Sites, resources, *habitats\** and *landscapes\** of global or national cultural, archeological or historical significance, and/or of *critical\** cultural, ecological, economic or religious/sacred importance for the traditional cultures of *local communities\** or *Indigenous Peoples\** identified through *engagement\** with these *local communities\** or *Indigenous Peoples\**.**

##### Identification method

Information on HCV\* 6 identification *shall\** be primarily sourced through the *engagement\** with *affected stakeholders\** and *interested stakeholders\** for identification of sites and resources, which have special (see in *criteria\** 3.5 and 4.7) and/or *critical\** cultural, religious or spiritual significance for *local communities\** or *Indigenous Peoples\**. Experts *may\** be also used for HCV\* identification. Partly the information *can\** be available in documents of forest and territorial and land use planning (forest plans (*lesnoy plan*), district-level forest management plans (*lesokhozyastvennyy reglament*), forest stand maps and detailed forest (*planshet*) maps, forest taxation records, territorial planning schemes, etc.), on topographic and thematic maps and others. Also, the information *can\** be obtained from specialized government, non-government and research organizations, local self-governments, *Indigenous Peoples\** communities, etc.

The list of HCV\* 6 subtypes given in Table 10, is not exhaustive; it *shall\** be viewed as preliminary: in the process of HCV\* 6 identification it *may\** be extended or shortened (for example, if any of HCV\* subtypes is not present within the *managed area* or *areas\**). Most HCV\* 6 subtypes occur everywhere in Russia. Some of the objects have limited occurrence.

Some HCV\* 6 subtypes *can\** have the status of PF or SPFH (see Table 5). When identifying HCV\* 6, the presence of at least the subtypes listed in Table 10 *shall\** be assessed.

A more detailed procedure for HCV\* 6 identification, including the identification method, the list of required information, the list of *affected stakeholders\** and *interested stakeholders\**, is provided in publications: *Metodicheskie rekomendatsii po vydeleniyu lesov, imeyushchikh vazhnoe sotsial'noe i kul'turnoe znachenie* (2014) and *Rekomendatsii po sotsial'nym aspektam sertifikatsii po scheme Lesnogo popechitel'skogo soveta FSC* (2009).

Conservation\* measures

Conservation\* measures for different HCV\* 6 subtypes are given in Table 10. Affected stakeholders\* or interested stakeholders\* can\* propose other conservation\* measures. If particular sites have the status of PNA\*, SPFH, PF, UNESCO World Heritage Sites, objects of cultural and historical heritage or other categories with legally regulated land use, conservation\* measures defined by The Organization\* for these sites shall\* be at least as strict as those stipulated by law.

Table 10. HCV\* 6 Subtypes

HCV* 6 Subtype	Conservation* measures
HCV* 6.1. Buildings and man-made objects of worship (churches and other objects specially designated for religious service, chapels, memorial crosses, rock drawings, dolmens, northern labyrinths, other megaliths, etc.)	They can* have the status of PNA*, PF or UNESCO World Heritage Sites, objects of cultural and historical heritage. Management activities in close proximity to such objects shall not* damage the integrity of the natural and cultural complex and perception of such objects in the surrounding landscape*. Conservation* measures can* be also proposed by affected stakeholders* or interested stakeholders*, for example, a logging ban on within a 200-500-m distance from the HCV* object
HCV* 6.2. Sacred natural objects* (trees, groves, caves, rocks, springs and others)	They can* have the status of PNA*, PF or SPFH. Conservation* measures may* be also established based on the proposals from affected stakeholders* or interested stakeholders*; for example, a ban on any management activities within a 100-500-m distance from the object; a total ban on harvesting and infrastructure* development within the territory of the sacred grove
HCV* 6.3. Vegetation objects (trees, groves and forest patches) with negative sacred connotations	They can* have the status of PNA*. Conservation* measures may* be also established based on the proposals from affected stakeholders* or interested stakeholders*; for example, a ban on any management activities within a 100-500-m distance from the object
HCV* 6.4. Archeological monuments (early man sites, ancient settlements, etc.)	They can* have the status of PF, objects of cultural and historical heritage. Conservation* measures may* be also established based on the proposals from affected stakeholders* or interested stakeholders*; for example, a ban on any management activities within a 100-500-m distance from the object
HCV* 6.5. Architectural monuments and garden and park art monuments	They can* have the status PNA*, PF, UNESCO World Heritage Sites, objects of cultural and historical heritage. Management activities in close proximity to such objects shall not* damage the integrity of the natural and cultural complex and perception of such objects in the surrounding landscape*. Conservation* measures may* be also established based on the proposals from affected stakeholders* or interested stakeholders*; for example, a ban on any management activities within a 100-500-m distance from the object
HCV* 6.6. Burial grounds, tombs, kurgans, zhalniks (burial mounds)	They can* have the status of PNA*, PF, UNESCO World Heritage Sites, objects of cultural and historical heritage. Conservation* measures may* be also established based on the proposals from affected stakeholders* or interested

HCV* 6 Subtype	Conservation* measures
	stakeholders*, for example, a ban on any management activities within a 100-500 m distance from the object
HCV* 6.7. Trails of ancient roads, paths, borders	Conservation* measures can* be proposed by affected stakeholders* or interested stakeholders*, for example, a ban on any management activities within a 50-m distance from the path
HCV* 6.8. Places of military glory, war memorials and obelisks	They can* have the status of PNA*, PF, UNESCO World Heritage Sites, objects of cultural and historical heritage. Conservation* measures may* be also established based on the proposals from affected stakeholders* or interested stakeholders*, for example, a ban on any management activities within a 100-500-m distance from the object
HCV* 6.9. Military burials and mass killing sites during the political repressions	They can* have the status of PNA*, PF, objects of cultural and historical heritage. Conservation* measures may* be also established based on the proposals from affected stakeholders* or interested stakeholders*, for example, a ban on any management activities within a 100-500 m distance from the object

## REFERENCES

1. Aksenov D., Dobrynin D., Dubinin M. et al. Atlas of Russia's Intact Forest Landscapes [*Atlas malonarushennykh lesnykh territoriy Rossii*]. Moscow: International Socio-Ecological Union; Washington DC: World Resources Institute, 2003. 186 p.
2. Aksenov D.E., Glushkov I.V., Dubinin M.Yu., Karpachevskiy M.L., Kobayakov K.N., Kostikova A.M., Liksakova N.S., Purekhovskiy A.Zh., Skvortsov V.E., Smirnov D.Yu., and Yanitskaya T.O. Mapping High Conservation Value Forests of Khabarovskiy Kray and Jewish Autonomous Oblast, Russian Far East: Categories Important for Preservation of Flora and Vegetation [*Vydelenie lesov vysokoy prirodookhrannoy tsennosti v Khabarovskom Krae i Evreyskoy Avtonomnoy Oblasti. Kategorii, vazhnye dlya sokhraneniya bioraznoobraziya rastitelnogo pokrova*]. St. Petersburg, 2011. 218 p.
3. Aksenov D.E., Glushkov I.V., Dubinin M.Yu., Karpachevskiy M.L., Kobayakov K.N., Kostikova A.M., Liksakova N.S., Purekhovskiy A.Zh., Skvortsov V.E., Smirnov D.Yu., and Yanitskaya T.O. Mapping High Conservation Value Forests of Primorskiy Kray, Russian Far East: Categories Important for Preservation of Flora and Vegetation [*Vydelenie lesov vysokoy prirodookhrannoy tsennosti v Primorskom krae. Kategorii, vazhnye dlya sokhraneniya rastitelnogo pokrova*]. Moscow: MSoES, 2006. 186 p.
4. Mapping of High Conservation Value Areas in Northwestern Russia: Gap-analysis of the Protected Areas Network in the Arkhangelsk, Vologda, Leningrad and Murmansk Oblasts, Karelia, and the City of St. Petersburg [*Sokhranenie tsennykh prirodnykh territoriy Severi-Zapada Rossii. Analiz reprezentativnosti seti OOPT Arkhangel'skoy, Vologodskoy, Leningradskoy i Murmanskoy oblastey, Respubliki Kareliya i Sankt Peterburga*]. Ed. Kobayakov K.N. St. Petersburg, 2011. 506 p.
5. Dyukarev V.N., Ermoshin V.V., Efremov D.F., Trush V.I., and Sheingauz A.S. Pristine Forests of the Far East Ecoregion: Identification Criteria and Mapping Methods [*Devstvennyye lesa Dal'nevostochnogo jekoregiona: kriterii vydeleniya i metodika kartografirovaniya*]. Khabarovsk, 2000. 60 p.
6. Efremov D.F., Baburin A.A., Vasilyev E.S., Ponomarenko S.Ya., and Shonin A.A. Methodological Guide on Identification of the Regional HCVF System (By the Example of the Russian Far East) [*Metodicheskie ukazaniya po vydeleniyu regional'noy sistemy LVPTs (na primere Dal'nego Vostoka)*]. Khabarovsk: Khabarovsk. kraevaya tipografiya, 2012. 116 p.
7. The Emerald Book of the Russian Federation. Areas of Special Conservation Significance in European Russia. Proposals on Identification [*Izumrudnaya kniga Rossiyskoy Federatsii*].

- Territorii osobogo prirodookhrannogo znacheniya Yevropeyskoy Rossii. Predlozheniya po vyyavleniyu*. P. 1. Moscow: Izd. Inst. Geogr. RAS, 2011-2013. 308 p.
8. Green Book of Siberia. Rare and Endangered Plant Communities [*Zelenaya kniga Sibiri. Redkie i nuzhdayushchiesya v okhrane rastitel'nye soobshchestva*]. Ed. I.Yu. Koropachinskiy. Novosibirsk: Nauka, 1996. 397 p.
  9. High Conservation Value Forests: Identification and Protection Experience [*Lesa vysokoy prirodookhrannoy tsennosti: opyt vyyavleniya i okhrany*]. Collection of Articles. Moscow: WWF, 2008. 88 p.
  10. High Value Wetlands [*Tsennye bolota*]. In: Wetlands in Russia [*Vodno-bolotnye ugodya Rossii*], vol. 2. Moscow: Wetlands International Publication No. 49, 1999. 88 p.
  11. Identification and Survey of Biologically Valuable Forests in Northwestern European Russia [*Vyavlenie i obsledovanie biologicheskii tsennykh lesov na Severo-Zapade Evropeyskoy chasti Rossii*]. Vol. 1. Methodology of Identification and Mapping [*Metodika vyavleniya i kartografirovaniya*]. Ed. L. Andersson, N.M. Alekseeva, E.S. Kuznetsova. Saint Petersburg, 2009. 238 p.
  12. Identification and Survey of Biologically Valuable Forests in Northwestern European Russia. [*Vyavlenie i obsledovanie biologicheskii tsennykh lesov na Severo-Zapade Evropeyskoy chasti Rossii*]. Vol. 2. Guidelines for Identification of Species Used at Forest Stand Unit Level [*Posobie po opredeleniyu vidov, ispolsuemykh na urovne vydelov*]. Ed. L. Andersson, N.M. Alekseeva, E.S. Kuznetsova. Saint Petersburg, 2009. 258 p.
  13. Important Plant Areas of Altay–Sayan Ecoregion: Identification Experience. [*Klyuchevye botanicheskie territorii Altai-Sayanskogo ekoregiona: opyt vydeleniya*]. Izd. RAN, 2009. 272 p.
  14. Important Bird Areas of Russia [*Klyuchevye ornitologicheskie territorii Rossii*]. Vol. 1. Important Bird Areas of International Importance in European Russia [*Klyuchevye ornitologicheskie territorii mezhdunarodnogo znacheniya v Evropeyskoy Rossii*]. Eds. T.V. Sviridova and V.A. Zubakin. Moscow: Russian Bird Conservation Union, 2000. 702 p.
  15. Important Bird Areas of Russia [*Klyuchevye ornitologicheskie territorii Rossii*]. Vol. 2. Important Bird Areas of International Importance in Western Siberia [*Klyuchevye ornitologicheskie territorii mezhdunarodnogo znacheniya v Zapadnoy Sibiri*]. Ed. S.A. Bukreev. Moscow: Russian Bird Conservation Union, 2006. 336 p.
  16. Important Bird Areas of Russia [*Klyuchevye ornitologicheskie territorii Rossii*]. Vol. 3. Important Bird Areas of International Importance in the Caucasus Ecoregion [*Klyuchevye ornitologicheskie territorii mezhdunarodnogo znacheniya v Kavkazskom ekoregione*]. Ed. S.A. Bukreev, G.S. Dzhamirzoev. Moscow: Russian Bird Conservation Union, 2009. 302 p.
  17. Intact Forest Landscapes of Russia: Current Conditions and Losses over the Last 13 Years [*Malonarushebnyye lesnye territorii Rossii: sovremennnoe sostoyanie i utraty za poslednie 13 let*]. A1 poster. Moscow: WWF, 2015.
  18. Khoroshev A.V., Nemchinova A.V., Avdanin V.O. Landscapes and Ecological Network of Kostroma Oblast. Landscape and Geographical Foundations of the Design of the Ecological Network in the Kostroma Region [*Landshafty i ekologicheskaya set' Kostromskoy oblasti. Landshaftno-geograficheskie osnovy proektirovaniya ekologicheskoy seti Kostromskoy oblasti*]. Kostroma: Kostrom. gos. universitet, 2013. 428 p.
  19. Konstantinova N.A., Kostina V.A., Koroleva N.E., Belkina O.A., Melekhin A.V. Key Plant Areas in Murmansk Oblast and Approaches to Their Mapping [*Klyuchevye botanicheskie territorii Murmanskoy oblasti i podhody k ih vydeleniyu*]. Information System of the Kola Science Centre of RAS, 2008. URL: [http://www.kolasc.net.ru/russian/sever07/sever07\\_3.pdf](http://www.kolasc.net.ru/russian/sever07/sever07_3.pdf).
  20. Krestov P.V. and Verkholat V.P. Rare Plant Communities in Primorskiy Krai and Amur Region [*Redkie rastitel'nye soobshchestva Primorya i Priamurya*]. Vladivostok, 2003. 200 p.
  21. Identification and Protection of High Conservation Value Forests in Arkhangelsk Oblast: Methodical Manual [*Vydelenie i sokhranenie lesov vysokoy prirodookhrannoy tsennosti v Arkhangel'skoy oblasti: metodicheskoe posobie*]. E.A. Ray, D.A. Dobrynin, S.V. Torkhov, etc. Arkhangelsk: World Wildlife Fund (WWF), 2010. 68 p.
  22. Methodological Approaches and Recommendations for Zoning of Intact Forest Landscapes in the Siberian Federal District [*Metodicheskie podkhody i rekomendatsii po zonirovaniyu malonarushebnykh lesnykh territoriy v Sibirskom federal'nom okruge*]. Trofimova N., Sipkin V., Brukhanov A., Nepovinnykh A., Shebeta D., Astapenko S., Gvozdarev A. Edited by Kobayakov K. Krasnoyarsk: Vsemirnyi Fond Dikoi Prirody (WWF), 2018, 64 p.

23. Zoning of Intact Forest Landscapes and Tracts in the Southern Russian Far East: methodological Approaches and Recommendations [Zonirovanie malonarushennykh lesnykh territoriy i massivov na yuge Dal'nego Vostoka Metodicheskie podkhody i rekomendatsii]. Esipova E., Kobyakov K., Kolbovskiy E. et al. Vladivostok: Vsemirnyi Fond Dikoi Prirody (WWF, 2018), 56 p.
24. Methodical Guidelines on Identification of Special Protection Forest Habitats in Habitats of Rare, Protected and Valuable Harvested Species of Animals and Plants Animals in the Southern Russian Far East [Methodicheskie ukazania po vydeleniju osobo zaschitnykh uchastkov lesa v mestakh rasprostraneniya i obitaniya redkih, okhranyaemykh i tsennykh promyslovykh vidov zhivotnykh i rasteniy yuga Dalnego Vostoka]. Ed. A.P. Kovalev. Khabarovsk: DVNIILH, 2010. 50 p.
25. Methodological Recommendations on Identification and Preservation of Forests Having High Social and Cultural Significance [Methodicheskie rekomendatsii po vydeleniju i sokhraneniyu lesov, imeyushchikh vazhnoe sotsial'noe i kulturnoe znachenie]. Ed. O.V. Ilyina, K.N. Kobyakov. Moscow: WWF, 2014. 124 p.
26. Nemchinova A.V. High Conservation Value Forests in Kostroma Oblast [*Lesy vysokoy prirodookhrannoy tsennosti Kostromskoy oblasti*]. Proc. of Fundamental and Application Problems of Botany in the Early 21st Century. All-Russia Conference (Petrozavodsk, 22–27 September 2008). Part 3: Okhrana rastitel'nonogo mira. Petrozavodsk: Karel. nauch. tsentr RAS, 2008. p. 368-371.
27. Pazhenkov A.S., Smelyansky I.Ya., Trofimova T.A. and Karyakin I.V. Ecological Network of the Republic of Bashkortostan [*Ekologicheskaya set' Respubliki Bashkortostan*]. Moscow: IUCN, 2005. 198 p.
28. Pristine Forests: Identification, Assessment and Management. Administrative Regulations of the Komi Republic [*Devstvennyye lesa: vyyavlenie, otsenka, upravlenie. Normativno-pravovyye akty Respubliki Komi*]. Syktyvkar: Serebraynaya taiga, 2004. 24 p.
29. Procedure of Special Survey for Identification of Specially Protected Forest Habitats (Pristine Forests) in the Komi Republic [Poryadok provedeniya spetsialnykh obsledovaniy dlya vydeleniya osobo zashchitnykh uchastkov lesov (devstvennykh lesov) na territorii Respubliki Komi]. Syktyvkar, 2001. 8 p.
30. Slashchev D.N., Sannikov P.Yu. High Conservation Value Forests of the Northwestern Perm Krai [*Lesy vysokoy prirodookhrannoy tsennosti severo-zapada Permskogo Kraya*]. *Geograficheskiy Vestnik*, No. 2, 2011. p. 66-72.
31. Titova S.V., Kobyakov K.N. Rare Forest Plants of Russia. Identification and Protection Measures in Forestry Operations [*Redkie lesnye rasteniya Rossii. Vyyavlenie i mery okhrany pri lesopol'zovanii*]. Moscow: WWF, 2014. 194 p.
32. Tsyachnyuk M.S., Konyushatov O.A., Kulyasova A.A. et al. Recommendations on Social Aspects of FSC Certification [*Rekomendatsii po sotsial'nym aspektam sertifikatsii po scheme Lesnogo Popechitel'skogo Soveta FSC*]. Ed. M.S. Tsyachnyuk. Vologda: Poligrafist. 2009 184 p.
33. Wetlands of International Importance [*Vodno-bolotnye ugodya mezhdunarodnogo znacheniya*]. In: *Wetlands in Russia [Vodno-bolotnye ugodya Rossii]*, vol. 1. Ed. V.G. Krivenko. Moscow: Wetlands International Publication, No. 47, 1998. 256 p.
34. Wetlands of International Importance in Russia [*Vodno-bolotnye ugodya Rossii, imeyushchie mezhdunarodnoe znachenie*]. Ed. A.A. Sirin. Moscow: Wetlands International Russia Programme, 2012. 48 p.
35. Wetlands of the Northern Caucasus [*Vodno-bolotnye ugodya Severnogo Kavkaza*]. In: *Wetlands in Russia [Vodno-bolotnye ugodya Rossii]*, vol. 6. Ed. A.L. Mishchenko. Moscow: Wetlands International, 2006. 316 p.
36. Wetlands in Northeastern Russia [*Vodno-bolotnye ugodya Severo-Vostoka Rossii*]. In: *Wetlands in Russia [Vodno-bolotnye ugodya Rossii]*, vol. 4. (Compiled by A.V. Andreev). Moscow: Wetlands International, 2001. 296 p.
37. Wetlands of the Southern Russian Far East [*Vodno-bolotnye ugodya yuga Dalnego Vostoka Rossii*]. In: *Wetlands in Russia [Vodno-bolotnye ugodya Rossii]*, vol. 5. Ed. V.N. Bocharnikov. Moscow: Wetlands International, 2005. 220 p.
38. Wetlands on the Shadow List to the Ramsar Convention [*Vodno-bolotnye ugodya, vnesennyye v Perspektivny spisok Ramsarskoy konventsii*]. In: *Wetlands in Russia [Vodno-bolotnye ugodya Rossii]*, vol. 3. Ed. V.G. Krivenko. Moscow: Wetlands International Global Ser., No. 3, 2000. 490 p.



39. Yanitskaya T. Addendum to Guidelines on Identification of High Conservation Value Forests in Russia [*Dopolneniya k Prakticheskomu rukovodstvu po vyddeleniyu lesov vysokoy prirodookhrannoy tsennosti v Rossii*]. Moscow: WWF. 2011. 68 p.
40. Yaroshenko A.Yu., Potapov P.V. and Turubanova S.A. The Intact Forest Landscapes in Northern European Russia [*Malonarushennye lesnye territorii Evropeyskogo Severa Rossii*]. Moscow: Greenpeace Russia, 2001. 75 p.

All the references given in this list can be downloaded at the HCVF Russia website in the Publications section (<http://hcvf.ru/publications>). The section is regularly updated to include new publications.

**Annex D2. Methodological Approaches and Recommendations for Zoning Intact Forest Landscapes and Tracts in the Southern Russian Far East**

The text below represents a summary of the *Zoning of Intact Forest Landscapes and Tracts in the Southern Russian Far East: Methodological Approaches and Recommendations*. In order to meet the standard’s requirements, *The Organization\* shall\** use the complete text of *Zoning* available at the link: <http://hcvf.ru/ru/publications/zonirovanie-malonarushennyh-lesnyh-territoriy-i-massivov-na-yuge-dalnego-vostoka-rossii>.

*IFL\* zoning* in the Southern Russian Far East (includes Khabarovsk and Primorskiy krays, Amur Oblast and Jewish Autonomous Oblast) in order to identify *IFL\* sites*, which are excluded from management activities (sites for which strict *conservation\** measures are established) *shall\** be executed in accordance with *Zoning of Intact Forest Landscapes and Tracts in the South of the Russian Far East: Methodological Approaches and Recommendations*. This document was developed by the Commission of the Technical Committee of the NWG Association on the Russian Far East Certification Issues.

In view of specific regional features of the Southern Russian Far East, *IFLs\**, which are excluded from management activities (sites for which strict *conservation\** measures are established) within the *managed area* or *areas\**, include the following:

- 2.1. Intact floodplain and valley forest\* complexes: forests and treeless ecosystems in floodplains and in low and middle terraces within *IFL\**, as well as valley complexes.
- 2.2. Subalpine coniferous complexes and stone birch forests, including fragments of elfin wood, meadow, forest-tundra, and mountain-tundra communities: patches of dark coniferous, stone birch and larch forest complexes and mountain communities within *IFL\**.
- 2.3. Pristine forests: patches of native forest communities long developed under the effect of natural disturbances that do not completely destroy the previous generations of the forest stand, i.e. do not change the overall forest development process.
- 2.4. Complexes of dark coniferous forests and wet meadows on the watershed plateaus: poorly drained patches of dark coniferous forests and wet meadows on the mountainous plateau and sometimes on gently sloping plateau-like watersheds within *IFL\**.
- 2.5. Reference basins or groups of basins of intact forests: patches of basins or their groups of second- and third-order tributaries within *IFL\**, which possess high diversity on the regional level, being more than twice as higher as the mean value for the physiographic region.

*IFL\* zoning* within the *managed area* or *areas\** in the Southern Russian Far East *shall\** be conducted in two stages as indicated in Table 11.

Table 11. Steps of *IFL\* zoning* in the Southern Russian Far East according to Section 6 of *Zoning Intact Forest Landscapes and Tracts in the Southern Russian Far East: Methodological Approaches and Recommendations*

Identification stages	Stage description
1. Site selection based on desktop study	<p>Site selection based on a desktop study is used to identify candidate areas where management activities will be excluded (for which it is planned to establish strict <i>conservation*</i> measures). It <i>shall*</i> be conducted based on <i>best available information*</i>, including forest inventory data, satellite images, topographic maps, relief maps, etc.</p> <p>The selected sites <i>shall*</i> meet the criteria for <i>HCV*</i> given in Section 6 <i>Zoning Intact Forest Landscapes and Tracts in the Southern Russian Far East: Methodological Approaches and Recommendations</i>.</p>



	<p><i>The Organization* shall* first identify categories HCV* 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 for the managed area or areas* as a whole, and only then category HCV* 2.5</i></p>
<p>2. Verification of the selected sites</p>	<p><i>The Organization* shall* determine the relevance of the data, which served as a basis for site selection during the desktop study, and conduct a field verification of the selected sites accordingly. During the field verification The Organization* shall* assess whether a selected site complies with the permissible disturbance criteria specified for each category of HCV* in the item Disturbance features and their value in Section 6 of Zoning Intact Forest Landscapes and Tracts in the Southern Russian Far East: Methodological Approaches and Recommendations.</i></p> <p>If the field verification confirms that the site meets all identification criteria, then strict <i>conservation*</i> measures <i>shall*</i> be established for such a site (this <i>shall*</i> be reflected in the <i>management plan*</i>); also, other requirements regarding <i>Principle* 9 shall*</i> be met. The minimal <i>IFL*s</i> area with strict <i>conservation*</i> measures within the <i>managed area or areas* shall*</i> be not less that indicated in Table 7. If results of the field verification show that the site does not meet with all the identification criteria, <i>conservation*</i> measures <i>shall*</i> be established in accordance with Table 12.</p>

*The Organization\* shall\* identify IFT\* to be excluded from management activities (for which strict conservation\* measures are established) in consistence with Zoning Intact Forest Landscapes and Tracts in the Southern Russian Far East: Methodological Approaches and Recommendations. The process of their identification is similar to the process of identifying IFL\* with strict conservation\* measures (see the item above).*

**Annex D3. Methodological Approaches and Recommendations for Zoning Intact Forest Landscapes in the Siberian Federal District**

The text below represents a summary of the *Methodological Approaches and Recommendations for Zoning of Intact Forest Landscapes in the Siberian Federal District*. In order to meet the standard’s requirements, *The Organization\* should\** use the complete text of *Methodological Approaches* available at the link: <http://hcvf.ru/ru/publications/metodicheskie-podhody-i-rekomendacii-po-zonirovaniyu-malonarushennyh-lesnyh-territoriy>.

*IFL\* zoning* in the Siberian Federal District (SFD), including the republics of Altay, Buryatia, Tuva and Khakassia, Altay, Zabaykalsky and Krasnoyarsk krays and Irkutsk, Kemerovo, Novosibirsk, Omsk and Tomsk oblasts aimed at identification of *IFL\** to be excluded from management activities (for which strict *conservation\** measures are established) *should\** be conducted according to *Methodological Approaches and Recommendations for Zoning IFL\* in the Siberian Federal District* (hereinafter *Methodological Approaches and Recommendations*). This document is developed by the Commission of the Technical Committee of the NWG Association on the Siberian Federal District Certification Issues.

*IFL\* zoning* within the *managed area* or *areas\** in the Siberian Federal District *should\** be implemented according to the steps given in Table 12.

Table 12. Steps of *IFL\** zoning in the Siberian Federal District (recommended)

Zoning steps	Step description
1. Analyzing and processing forest inventory data	<p>This step has two sub-steps (see 6.1 of Methodological Approaches and Recommendations):</p> <p>A) Analysis of forest inventory data</p> <p>When analyzing the forest inventory data, the timing of the data collection <i>should*</i> be determined. If the data are more than 10 years old, firstly, it is necessary to update the inventory results using the <i>best available information*</i>, such as the results of interpretation of space images, field surveys etc. If the forest inventory data have valid timing of compilation, for further work it is necessary to use forest stand plans and forest taxation (inventory) materials.</p> <p>B) Processing of forest inventory data using geographical information systems (GIS), including forest taxation materials, spatial localization of data and digitizing of forest stand plans.</p> <p>At this stage it is recommended to engage relevant specialists.</p> <p>Result: forest inventory data available as a vector layer of a network of sub-compartments (vydels) where each sub-compartment contains attributive information consistent with the forest taxation records</p>
2. Modeling the network of catchment areas	<p>Modeling the network of catchment areas is performed in GIS in the automatic mode (see 6.2 of Methodological Approaches and Recommendations). A digital elevation model and elements of the hydrographic network are recommended as initial input data. It is recommended to engage relevant specialists in modelling.</p> <p>Result: the digital layer of the network of third-order catchment areas</p>

<p>3. Identifying criteria for most valuable parts of <i>IFL</i> *</p>	<p>The proposed criteria (see 6.3 of Methodological Approaches and Recommendations) are:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Patches of natural mature and overmature coniferous forest stands among young and middle-aged forest stands.</li> <li>2. Rare forest types (rare <i>ecosystems</i> *).</li> <li>3. Forest sites along wetlands and watercourses.</li> <li>4. Multi-species forests (with five or more tree species in the forest stand).</li> <li>5. Forests on slopes more than 30°, on cliffs, benches, near rifts, on stone runs (kurums), in gorges, hollows, gullies.</li> </ol> <p>The <i>Organization</i> * may* extend the list of criteria if necessary. Result: the list of criteria for identification of most valuable parts of <i>IFL</i> * and their description</p>
<p>4. Identifying criteria for catchment areas and their ranking</p>	<p>Each third-order catchment area is assessed for compliance with five criteria for identification of the most valuable parts of <i>IFL</i> * given in 6.3 of Methodological Approaches and Recommendations. After that ranking of third-order catchment areas is performed taking into account the weighting factor for each criterion as indicated in 6.4 of Methodological Approaches and Recommendations. This step <i>should</i> * be performed in GIS program in the manual or automatic mode.</p> <p>Result: graphic visualization of the network of third-order catchment areas having the highest value</p>
<p>5. Assessing third-order catchment areas with regard to fire resistance</p>	<p>The network of third-order catchment areas is assessed in order to identify the basins with the highest forest fire resistance by using one of the algorithms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- algorithm based on records of registered fires (see 6.5.1 of Methodological Approaches and Recommendations);</li> <li>- algorithm based on ground-based assessments, which includes the analysis of forest vegetation characteristics, topographic data and information on border areas (see 6.5.2 of Methodological Approaches and Recommendations).</li> </ul> <p>Result: graphic visualization of the network of third-order catchment areas having the highest value and the greatest fire resistance</p>
<p>6. Assessing third-order catchment areas with regard to potential pest reservations</p>	<p>The network of third-order catchment areas is assessed in order to identify potential pest reservations and select basins with minimal probability of the presence of such reservations (see 6.6 of Methodological Approaches and Recommendations). During the assessment the following <i>should</i> * be done:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- identify the pest outbreak sites (the area of study) in the SFD;</li> <li>- select possible forest pest insects for the <i>managed area</i> or <i>areas</i> *;</li> <li>- determine most probable conditions for development of a primary reservation of a specific forest insect based on the main species and</li> </ul>



	<p>forest type (group of types) according to the forest taxation records; and</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- consider potential environmental and economic loss caused by forest insects.</li> </ul> <p>Result: graphic visualization of the network of third-order catchment areas having the highest value, the greatest fire resistance, and the lowest probability of the presence of potential pest reservations</p>
<p>7. Identifying <i>IFL</i>* parts to be excluded from management activities and calculation of the allowable area</p>	<p>The choice of <i>IFL</i>* part or parts to be excluded from management activities (for which strict <i>conservation</i>* measures are established) through <i>engagement</i>* with interested <i>stakeholders</i>* based on the findings of the previous stages. It is recommended to involve qualified specialists. The minimal size of <i>IFL</i>* parts within the <i>managed area</i> or <i>areas</i>* within <i>The Organization's</i>* concession <i>shall</i>* be not less than specified in Table 7.</p> <p>Result: <i>IFL</i>* part or parts excluded from management activities (for which strict <i>conservation</i>* measures are established)</p>

## Annex E. Application of the concept of scale, intensity and risk (SIR) in *Criteria*\* 6.2 and 6.3

The Guideline for Standard Developers for addressing risk of unacceptable activities in regard to scale and intensity (FSC-GUI-60-002 V1-0 D1-3 EN) offers an approach to classify *The Organizations*\* by measurable characteristics of their management activity and by differentiating standard's *indicators*\* with *SIR*\* requirements based on measurable thresholds.

In the context of the Russian Federation, all certificate holders perform management activities in *natural forests*\*, while *plantations*\* are currently absent. Certified smallholders (with *Management Units*\* less than 1000 ha) and certificate holders that perform only low *intensity*\* harvesting also do not occur. Therefore, in accordance to the Guideline, all Russian certificate holders refer to the medium group with respect to their *impact*\*. Therefore, for goals of this Standard, it was decided in general case not to classify certificate holders by *scale*\* and *intensity*\*.

The *SIR*\* concept is mentioned in almost all FSC *Principles*\*. Clear requirements to consider *SIR*\* are found in the following *criteria*\*: 1.7, 2.3, 4.3, 4.4, 4.5, 5.1, 5.4, 5.5, 6.1, 6.2, 6.3, 6.4, 6.5, 7.1, 7.2, 7.6, 8.2, 8.5, 9.1, 9.3, 9.4, and 10.9. Further on, these *criteria*\* are referred to as *SIR*\* *criteria*\*. Following the requirement of The Guideline for Standard Developers for addressing risk of unacceptable activities in regard to scale and intensity, *SIR*\* concept is reflected by standard developers directly in standard's *indicators*\* that were identified as high *risk*\* areas. In some specific cases, to take into account *scale*\* and *intensity*\*, additional *indicators*\* were included or IGI *indicators*\* were strengthened by respective requirements.

*Criterion*\* 6.2 is the only one that directly requires from *The Organization*\* to conduct a special assessment of *scale*\*, *intensity*\* and *risk*\* of potential negative impact of management activity on identified *environmental value*\*.

According to The Guideline for Standard Developers for addressing risk of unacceptable activities in regard to scale and intensity, the notions of *scale*\*, *intensity*\* and *risk*\* in *Criteria*\* 6.2 and 6.3 directly refer to the potential negative impact of management activity but not to *The Organization*\* itself.

Accordingly, this Annex contains requirements on assessing *scale*\*, *intensity*\* and *risk*\* to fulfill requirements of *Criteria*\* 6.2 and 6.3 (while *Criterion*\* 6.3 does not require *risk*\* assessment, it requires to elaborate measures to address *risks*\* identified in accordance with 6.2; therefore, a required procedure for elaboration of such measures has been included here).

### **Assessing *scale*\*, *intensity*\* and *risk*\* of potential negative impact of management activity on identified *environmental values*\* according to *Criterion*\* 6.2**

*The Organization*\* shall\* consider those negative impacts of their management activity on *environmental values*\* that are most serious, exerting *significant*\* damage, and most probable.

When conducting a *risk assessment*\* of negative impact of management on identified *environmental values*\* at least the following potential areas of high *risk*\* shall\* be assessed:

1. *Habitats*\* of *rare*\* and *threatened species*\*;
2. Sites with high probability of fire occurrence;
3. Forest sites with poor sanitary conditions;
4. Sites with vulnerable soils (steep slopes, poorly drained sites, sites with poorly developed soils);
5. Forests nearby water objects (especially nearby water objects important for fisheries);
6. Sites nearby infrastructural objects, including bridge crossings and other crossings over water objects;
7. Sites where operations associated with the use and utilization of fuels, lubricants, *chemicals*\* and conservants are conducted;
8. Sites where fertilizers are applied;
9. *HCV*\* areas and *Representative Sample Areas*\*.

It must be taken into account that *risk*\* areas *can*\* extend beyond the aforementioned issues. At the same time, the aforementioned *risk*\* areas *can*\* be missing within the *Management Unit*\*. Therefore, when conducting a *risk assessment*\* of negative impact on *environmental values*\*, the *context of The Organization's\* own management activity\* shall*\* be considered. Depending on the size and location of the *Management Unit*\*, peculiarities of forest and *managed area*\*, presence or absence of *environmental values*\*, applied management practices and forest management methods, and other specifics, *risk*\* of negative impact *can*\* vary within each *Management Unit*\*.

*Risk assessment*\* of negative impact *shall*\* be conducted for all high *risk*\* areas designated by *The Organization*\*. Depending on *risk assessment*\* of negative impact, corrective measures are developed and implemented to reduce *risk*\* to a low level.

*Risk assessment*\* *shall*\* be integrated in planning and consider the monitoring outcomes of management activity. Monitoring objects are also listed (but may not be limited to them) in *Criterion*\* 8.2. The level of documentation, frequency as well as the method of *risk assessment*\* of negative impact on *environmental values*\* are determined and justified by *The Organization*\*, while taking into account the requirements of the Annex. When doing this, all types of *The Organization's*\* activity *shall*\* be considered.

Given the decision not to classify *The Organizations's*\* activity by *scale*\* and *intensity*\* of potential negative impact (in general) and considering it roughly equal for all the companies, it is also not required to make assessment of *scale*\* and *intensity*\* of potential negative impact when fulfilling the requirements of Criteria 6.2 and 6.3. However, *The Organization*\* *may*\*, if it deems appropriate, make assessment of the *scale*\* and *intensity*\* of its impact and include it in *risk assessment*\* based on provisions described below.

When assessing the *scale*\* and *intensity*\* of impact, the list of affected *environmental values*\* and assessment's geographical scope (spatial borders) *shall*\* be determined.

It is necessary to take into account that the *scale*\* of potential negative impact, depending on surrounding conditions and management systems and methods, *can*\* extend beyond the limits of *Management Unit*\*.

When assessing the *scale*\* and *intensity*\* of impact, the following *shall*\* be evaluated:

- Planned impact – the impact that occurs due to planned management activity,
- Unplanned impact – the impact that occurs due to unplanned events (e.g. fuels and lubricants spill, disturbance of waterstream bed, destruction of *HCV*\*).

The assessment of the *scale*\* and *intensity*\* of impact takes into account the nature of impact, its type and reversibility and the vulnerability of a *environmental value*\* to determine the overall significance of the impact. Measures aimed at mitigation of the planned impact are developed in line with the general assessment of the significance of the impact that determines the level of risk. Mitigation measures of the unplanned impact are aimed at decreasing the likelihood of its occurrence. Later on, in the course of implementation, the efficiency of the measures is evaluated based on monitoring outcomes in accordance with the requirements of *Criterion*\* 8.2.

Since the *scale*\* and *intensity*\* determine the level of *risk*\*, their criteria are important.

By its *scale*\* the impact can be classified into local and landscape-level.

The local-level impact is restricted to the area of immediate impact on *environmental values*\*, e.g. a harvest area or location of the object of infrastructure.

The landscape-level impact affects *environmental values*\* across the landscape, *managed area*\* or significant part of the latter.

The *intensity*\* of impact can be classified into low and high.

The low *intensity*\* means that the impact does not lead to any permanent adverse changes of *environmental values*\* and its duration is short-lived.

The high *intensity*\* means that the impact leads or *can*\* lead to permanent adverse changes of *environmental values*\*, until it is entirely lost and its duration is long-lived.

In case of a combination of *low intensity*\* and local or landscape level, the *risk*\* of negative impact is also low. For the rest of combinations, it is high.

### **Measures to reduce the *risk*\* of negative impact of management activity on identified *environmental values*\***

For each high *risk*\* area designated by *The Organization*\*, *risk*\* mitigation measures *shall*\* be developed and implemented. *Risk*\* mitigation measures *shall*\* encompass at least all parts of *Management Unit*\* where *The Organization's*\* *current activities*\* are performed, in first turn in high *risk*\* areas within the *Management Unit*\*.

Of all ways, methods, technologies and management practices available, those are selected that prevent and/or minimize potential negative *consequences*\*. Management methods and decisions that lead to most serious *consequences*\* *shall*\* be excluded.

### **The gradual approach**

Assessment of *scale*\*, *intensity*\* and *risk*\* of negative impact of management activity on identified *environmental values*\* and when developing *risk*\* mitigation measures *the Organization*\* *may*\* do this gradually proportionate to the *scale*\* of *The Organization's*\* current activity. This approach means that *the Organization*\* *may*\* implement them not simultaneously throughout the whole *Management Unit*\*, but only in those areas where *The Organization's*\* *current activities*\* are carried out and/or *environmental values*\* are affected. Measures and actions assigned according to this approach *shall*\* be first implemented in those parts of the *Management Unit*\*, where activities of the highest *intensity*\* are carried out at present: e.g. clearcutting, construction and utilization of roads and bridge crossings, development of other facilities of forest and timber processing *infrastructure*\*, tree planting or establishment of forest plantations; application of *fertilizers*\*; use of *chemicals*\* to eliminate pests, etc.

If *The Organization*\* decides to apply the approach, it *shall*\* develop and include into the *management plan*\* a step-by-step plan for including new sites and facilities with the list of such objects and the dates of putting them into operation, aligned with the plans of operational developments. The order of priority for putting new managed sites and facilities into operation is determined by *The Organization*\*, depending on the degree they could be affected by the activities, taking into account the results of monitoring and *risk assessment*\*.

### **Steps for conducting *risk assessment*\* of negative *impact*\* of management activity on identified *environmental values*\* and for development of *risk*\* mitigation measures**

1. To document information about planned management and other activities.
2. To document information on *environmental values*\* that *can*\* be affected by *The Organization's*\* management and other activities.
3. To identify high risk areas regarding *environmental values*\* based on the *context of The Organization's*\* *management activity*\*.
4. To assess the severity of *risk*\* with respect to *environmental values*\*.
5. Based on *risk assessment*\* to develop and implement *risk*\* mitigation measures:
  - Measures to mitigate *risk*\* of negative impact (engagement of experts, choice of basic harvesting systems, harvesting season, harvesting techniques, size and shape of harvest sites, method and timing of contiguity and spatial placement of harvest sites, harvest area development technologies, construction methods for bridge crossings and by-road drainage systems, methods for clearing harvest sites, *forest regeneration*\*, forest tending, forest protection, organization of additional training of *workers*\* etc.);
  - mitigation measures to lower the likelihood of occurrence of unplanned negative impacts;
  - internal control measures for implementing planned measures (procedures and instructions, frequency and timing of inspections, persons in charge, way of action etc.); and



- whenever necessary, to determine additional monitoring characteristics;
6. Based on the results of implementation of *risk\** mitigation measures, following the monitoring procedure, the risk assessment\* is repeated with the frequency determined by *The Organization\** according to 8.1.1 to ensure that the *risk\** of negative *impact\** be reduced. Otherwise new measures to mitigate the *risk\** shall\* be developed and implemented.

## 15. Glossary of terms

The glossary includes IGI terms and other internationally accepted definitions (Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO), the Convention on Biological Diversity (1992), the Millennium Ecosystem Assessment (2005), the World Conservation Union (IUCN), the International Labour Organization (ILO), the Invasive Alien Species Programme of the Convention on Biological Diversity and others). The term “based on” means that a definition was adapted from an existing definition as provided in an international source and/or IGI. Definitions marked with “Introduced” are for the terms entered in the standard by the Standard Development Group.

**Adaptive management:** A systematic process of continually improving management policies and practices by learning from the outcomes of existing measures (Source: Based on World Conservation Union (IUCN). Glossary definitions as provided on IUCN website)

**Affected stakeholder:** Any person, group of persons or entity that is or is likely to be subject to the effects of the activities of a *Management Unit*<sup>\*</sup>. Examples include, but are not restricted to (for example in the case of downstream landowners), persons, groups of persons or entities located in the neighborhood of the *Management Unit*<sup>\*</sup>. The following are examples of affected stakeholders:

- *Local communities*<sup>\*</sup>
- *Indigenous Peoples*<sup>\*</sup>
- *Workers*<sup>\*</sup>
- Forest dwellers
- Neighbors
- Downstream landowners
- Local processors
- Local businesses
- *Tenure*<sup>\*</sup> and *use*<sup>\*</sup> *rights* holders, including landowners
- Organizations authorized or known to act on behalf of *affected stakeholders*<sup>\*</sup>, for example social and environmental NGOs, labor unions, etc.

(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2)

Note: In Russia the following groups are also referred to as *affected stakeholders*<sup>\*</sup>:

- Resource *use rights*<sup>\*</sup> holders, for example, hunting providers, users of water resources, edible, medicinal plants and other *non-timber forest products*<sup>\*</sup>;
- Holders of rights for growing woody planting materials, farming, research, educational, recreational and religious activities;
- Organizations engaged in construction and operation of linear infrastructure, man-made *water bodies*<sup>\*</sup> and/or hydrotechnical facilities;
- Organizations dealing with geological survey of the subsoil and development of mineral deposits.

**Alien species:** A species, subspecies or lower taxon, introduced outside its natural past or present distribution; includes any part, gametes, seeds, eggs, or propagules of such species that might survive and subsequently reproduce (Source: Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), Invasive Alien Species Programme. Glossary of Terms as provided on CBD website).

**Applicable law:** Means applicable to *The Organization*<sup>\*</sup> as a *legal*<sup>\*</sup> person or business enterprise in or for the benefit of the *Management Unit*<sup>\*</sup> and those laws which affect the implementation of the FSC Principles and Criteria. This includes any combination of statutory law (Parliamentary-approved) and case law (court interpretations), subsidiary regulations,



associated administrative procedures, and the national constitution (if present) which invariably takes *legal\** precedence over all other *legal\** instruments (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Best Available Information:** Data, facts, documents, expert opinions, and results of field surveys or consultations with *stakeholders\** that are most credible, accurate, complete, and/or pertinent and that can be obtained through *reasonable\** effort and cost, subject to the *scale\** and *intensity\** of the management activities and the *Precautionary Approach\**.

**Binding Agreement:** A deal or pact, written or not, which is compulsory to its signatories and enforceable by law. Parties involved in the agreement do so freely and accept it voluntarily.

**Biological control agents:** *Organisms\** used to eliminate or regulate the *population\** of other *organisms\** (Source: based on FSC, 1994 and IUCN). Glossary definitions as provided on IUCN website.

**Biological diversity:** The variability among living *organisms\** from all sources including, inter alia, terrestrial, marine and other aquatic *ecosystems\** and the ecological complexes of which they are a part; this includes diversity within species, between species and of *ecosystems\** (Source: Convention on Biological Diversity 1992, Article 2).

**Candidate protected nature areas (PNA):** Any area planned by the decision of governmental bodies and local self-government to be established as *protected nature areas\** of the federal, regional, or municipal level. The information about candidate protected nature areas can be found in territorial planning schemes of the Russian Federation, subjects of the Russian Federation, municipality, as well as in PNA network development schemes and other respective documents. (Source: Urban Planning Code No.190-FZ of the Russian Federation as of December 29 2004 (Introduced)).

**Cartographic materials:** Evidence of compliance with the requirements of the standard in hard copy and/or on electronic media in the form of maps and land plans and schemes of different scales, aerial photography (aerial images and photomaps), satellite images of different resolution, literature and reference materials (descriptions of terrain, catalogues of administrative and territorial division, etc.) (Introduced).

**Chemicals:** Mineral or organic substances, including *fertilizers\**, insecticides, fungicides, hormones and others, used in forest management. (Introduced).

**Confidential information:** Private facts, data and content that, if made publicly available, might put at risk *The Organization\**, its business interests or its relationships with *stakeholders\**, clients and competitors.

Interpretation in the Russian context is based on Federal Law No.149-FZ as of July 27 2006 (*On Information, Information Technologies and Protection of Information*): **Confidential information** is information that cannot be disclosed because it contains commercial, internal or professional secrecy. Once becomes *publicly available\** in oral or documented form or on electronic media, it can pose a *threat\** to business interests of *The Organization\**, including due to impaired relations with *interested stakeholders\**, customers and competitors, as well as to the *workers\*\** right for personal data protection. Confidential information cannot include information that contradicts or impedes implementation of the instructions of this standard.

**Connectivity:** A measure of how connected or spatially continuous a corridor, network, or matrix is. The fewer gaps, the higher the connectivity. Related to the structural connectivity concept; functional or behavioral connectivity refers to how connected an area is for a process, such as an animal moving through different types of *landscape\** elements. Aquatic connectivity deals with the accessibility and transport of materials and *organisms\**, through groundwater and surface water, between different patches of aquatic *ecosystems\** of all kinds. (Source: based on R.T.T. Forman. 1995. Land Mosaics. The Ecology of Landscapes and Regions. Cambridge University Press, 632 pp).

**Consequences:** Outcome of the response of *ecosystems\** and society to human-caused and other disturbances or effects manifested either as the loss of their *values\**, *resilience\**, dysfunction, degradation or complete destruction, or as reverse positive developments (Introduced).

**Conservation/Protection:** These words are used interchangeably when referring to management activities designed to maintain the identified *environmental* or cultural *values*\* in existence long-term. Management activities may range from zero or minimal interventions to a specified range of appropriate interventions and activities designed to maintain, or compatible with maintaining, these identified *values*\* (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Conservation Areas Network:** Those portions of the *Management Unit*\* for which *conservation*\* is the primary and, in some circumstances, exclusive objective; such areas include *Representative Sample Areas*\*, *conservation zones*\*, *protection areas*\*, *connectivity*\* areas and *High Conservation Value*\* areas.

**Conservation zones and protection areas:** Defined areas that are designated and managed primarily to safeguard species, *habitats*\*, *ecosystems*\*, natural features or other site-specific *values*\* because of their natural *environmental* or cultural *values*\*, or for purposes of monitoring, evaluation or research, not necessarily excluding other management activities. For the purposes of the *Principles and Criteria*, these terms are used interchangeably, without implying that one always has a higher degree of conservation or protection than the other. The term 'protected area' is not used for these areas, because this term implies *legal*\* or official status, covered by national regulations in many countries. In the context of the *Principles and Criteria*, management of these areas should involve active *conservation*\*, not passive *protection*\* (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2)

**Note:** In the context of the *Principles and Criteria*, these terms do not only mean the areas with *legal*\* conservation status, but also the areas voluntarily set aside by *The Organization*\* for the purpose of *conservation*\*.

**Context of *The Organization's* management activities:** Specific features of *The Organization's*\* management activities, which are determined by the following characteristics:

- size and geographical location of *the Management Unit*\*;
- specific features of the forest land, types of forest and forest growing conditions of the *managed area (areas)*\*;
- location of the *managed area (areas)*\* within the *landscape*\*;
- presence of *environmental values*\*, their vulnerability to potential disturbances and *sustainability*\*;
- presence or absence of *primary forests*\*;
- history of development and forest management in the area;
- presence of *local communities*\* in the *managed area*\* and their density;
- presence or absence of *Indigenous Peoples*\*; and
- management practices and methods (e.g. selection of harvesting techniques and methods, clearing of harvest sites, methods of *forest regeneration*\* and forest tending, timing of harvest, size (area), configuration, spatial location, and the character of adjacency of harvest areas in the *landscape*\* and equipment used and other specific features). (Introduced)

**Critical:** The concept of criticality or fundamentality in *Principle*\* 9 and *HCVs*\* relates to irreplaceability and to cases where loss or major damage to this *HCV*\* would cause serious prejudice or suffering to *affected stakeholders*\*. An ecosystem service is considered to be critical (HCV 4) where a disruption of that service is likely to cause, or poses a *threat*\* of, severe negative *impacts*\* on the welfare, health or survival of *local communities*\*, on the environment, on *HCVs*\*, or on the functioning of significant *infrastructure*\* (roads, dams, buildings etc.). The notion of criticality here refers to the importance and *risk*\* for natural resources and environmental and socio-economic *values*\* (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Criterion (pl. Criteria):** A means of judging whether or not a *Principle*\* (of forest stewardship) has been fulfilled (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0).

**Culturally appropriate [mechanisms]:** Means/approaches for outreach to target groups that are in harmony with the customs, *values*\*, sensitivities, and ways of life of the target audience.

**Current activities of *The Organization*:** Activities of *The Organization*\* carried out in accordance with the *management plan*\* for the current year. (Introduced).



**Customary law:** Interrelated sets of *customary rights*\* may be recognized as customary law. In some jurisdictions, customary law is equivalent to statutory law, within its defined area of competence and may replace the statutory law for defined ethnic or other social groups. In some jurisdictions customary law complements statutory law and is applied in specified circumstances (Source: based on N.L. Peluso and P. Vandergeest. 2001. Genealogies of the political forest and customary rights in Indonesia, Malaysia and Thailand, Journal of Asian Studies 60(3):761–812).

**Customary rights:** Rights which result from a long series of habitual or customary actions, constantly repeated, which have, by such repetition and by uninterrupted acquiescence, acquired the force of a law within a geographical or sociological unit (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0).

**Note:** In the context of the standard, social relations are considered with respect of humans and forest, therefore the object of *customary rights*\* is the *managed area*\* or its part, as well as activities affecting it. The examples of *customary rights*\* objects are harvesting of mushrooms, berries, medicinal, edible and technical plants, etc, use of wood resources for own needs, including for traditional crafts, haymaking, hunting, fishing, beekeeping, religious ceremonies, cultural traditions, recreation. The holder (subject) of *customary rights*\* can\* be an individual or a group of people united according to certain attributes (professional, cultural, historical and traditional) that maintain regular, periodic or seasonal use of the forest territory for which rights are claimed.

**Degraded forest:** Forest that as a result of overharvesting and/or overextraction of *non-timber forest products*\* and other related activities, poor management, multiple fire occurrences, cattle grazing or other disturbances in the course of the use of natural resource has been altered to such a degree that the damage to soil and vegetation inhibited and delayed *forest restoration*\*, making impossible its *restoration*\* at least to the *pre-harvest condition*\* in mid-term or short-term and thus reducing the forest's capacity to provide goods and/or services (Source: based on FAO, 2009; The International Tropical Timber Organization (ITTO), 2002, 2005; Center for Biological Diversity, 2001, 2005) (Introduced).

**Dispute:** For the purpose of the IGI, this is an expression of dissatisfaction by any person or organization presented as a complaint to *The Organization*\*, relating to its management activities or its conformity with the FSC Principles and Criteria, where a response is expected (Source: based on FSC-PRO-01-005 V3-0 Processing Appeals).

**Dispute of substantial duration:** *Dispute*\* that continues for more than twice as long as the predefined timelines in the FSC System (this is, for more than 6 months after receiving the complaint, based on FSC-STD-20-001).

**Dispute of substantial magnitude:** For the purpose of the International Generic Indicators, a *dispute*\* of substantial magnitude is a *dispute*\* that involves one or more of the following:

- Affects the *legal*\* or *customary rights*\* of *Indigenous Peoples*\* and *local communities*\*; and/or
- Where the negative *impact*\* of management activities is of such a scale that it cannot be reversed or mitigated; and/or
- Physical violence; and/or
- Destruction of property; and/or
- Presence of military bodies; and/or
- Acts of intimidation against *forest*\* *workers*\* and *stakeholders*\*.

**Economic viability:** The capability of developing and surviving as a relatively independent social, economic or political unit. Economic viability may require but is not synonymous with profitability (Source: based on the definition provided on the website of the European Environment Agency).

**Ecosystem:** A dynamic complex of plant, animal and micro-organism communities and their non-living environment interacting as a functional unit (Source: Convention on Biological Diversity 1992, Article 2).



**Note:** ecosystem's components are *populations\** of *organisms\** of various trophic groups and the *habitat\** being transformed by them.

**Ecosystem function:** An intrinsic ecosystem characteristic related to the set of conditions and processes whereby an ecosystem maintains its integrity (such as primary productivity, food chain, biogeochemical cycles). Ecosystem functions include such processes as decomposition, production, nutrient cycling, and fluxes of nutrients and energy. For FSC purposes, this definition includes ecological and evolutionary processes such as gene flow and disturbance regimes, regeneration cycles and ecological seral development (succession) stages. (Source: based on R. Hassan, R. Scholes and N. Ash. 2005. Ecosystems and Human Well-being: Synthesis. The Millennium Ecosystem Assessment Series. Island Press, Washington DC; and R.F. Noss. 1990. Indicators for monitoring biodiversity: a hierarchical approach. Conservation Biology 4(4):355–364).

**Ecosystem services:** The benefits people obtain from *ecosystems\**. These include:

- provisioning services such as food, forest products and water;
- regulating services such as regulation of floods, drought, land degradation, air quality, climate and disease;
- supporting services such as soil formation and nutrient cycling; and
- cultural services and cultural *values\** such as recreational, spiritual, religious and other non-material benefits.

**Engaging/engagement:** The process by which *The Organization\** communicates, consults and/or provides for the participation of *interested\** and/or *affected stakeholders\** ensuring that their concerns, desires, expectations, needs, rights and opportunities are considered in the establishment, implementation and updating of the *management plan\** (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Note:** Each time when the term 'engagement' is used in the standard, this implies that the engagement is conducted in a *culturally appropriate\** manner. In the *indicators\** of the standard the term *culturally appropriate\** is not used because it has no analogues in Russian that would be commonly used, short, euphonious and devoid of multiple interpretations.

**Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA):** Systematic process used to identify potential environmental and social *impacts\** of proposed projects, to evaluate alternative approaches, and to design and incorporate appropriate prevention, mitigation, management and monitoring measures (Source: based on Environmental impact assessment, guidelines for FAO field projects. Food and agriculture organization of the United Nations (FAO). Rome, 2011; FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Environmental values:** The following set of elements of the biophysical and human environment:

- *ecosystem\** functions (including carbon sequestration and storage);
- *biological diversity\**;
- water resources;
- soils;
- atmosphere;
- *landscape\** values (including cultural and spiritual values).

The actual worth attributed to these elements depends on human and societal perceptions (Source: FSC 2011).

**Interpretation of the term for Russia:** **Environmental Values** in Russian context for protection of these *environmental values\** during *The Organization's\** management activities is necessary:

1. *Protection\** of *rare\** and threatened *species\** and their *habitats\** according to *Criterion\** 6.4;
2. *Protection\** of Representative *Sample Areas\** of *native ecosystems\** and of *Conservation Area Network\** as a whole, according to *Criterion\** 6.5;
3. *Protection\** of *habitat features\**, according to *Criterion\** 6.6;
4. *Protection\** of *water bodies\**, according to *Criterion\** 6.7;



5. *Protection\* of landscape values\**, according to *Criterion\** 6.8. *The Organization\** may\* add other types of relevant *environmental values\** to the list that are of significance for its activities (for example, *landscape values\**, *ecosystem functions\**, etc.).
6. Protection of *High Conservation Values\**, according to Principle 9.
7. Implementation of all the Applicable *legislation\**, according to *Criteria\** 1.3, 1.4, 1.5. *The Organization\** may\* include to this list other types of *environmental values\**, that are of significance according to the character of its activities (for example, other *landscape values\**, *ecosystem functions\** etc.).

**Environmentally appropriate:** Ruling out technologies, ways and methods of management activities, harvesting of timber and other forest products and ways of delivering services, which ignore and cause reduction of the *environmental values\**, *HCVs\**, social and other *values\**. (Introduced)

**Externalities:** The positive and negative *impacts\** of activities on *interested\** and/or *affected stakeholders\** that are not directly involved in those activities, or on a natural resource or the environment, which do not usually enter standard cost accounting systems, such that the market prices of the products of those activities do not reflect the full costs or benefits (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Fair compensation:** Remuneration that is proportionate to the magnitude and type of services rendered by another party or of the harm that is attributable to the first party.

**Fertilizer:** Mineral or organic substances, most commonly N, P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> and K<sub>2</sub>O, which are applied to soil for the purpose of enhancing plant growth.

**Focal species:** Species whose requirements for persistence define the attributes that must be present if that landscape is to meet the requirements of the species that occur there (Source: Lambeck, R., J. 1997. Focal Species: A multi-species Umbrella for Nature Conservation. Conservation Biology vol 11 (4): 849-856.).

**Forest:** A tract of land dominated by trees (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2. Derived from FSC Guidelines for Certification Bodies, Scope of Forest Certification, Section 2.1 first published in 1998, and revised as FSC-GUI-20-200 in 2005, and revised again in 2010 as FSC-DIR-20-007 FSC Directive on Forest Management Evaluations, ADVICE-20-007-01).

**Forest regeneration (reforestation):** The process and activities aimed to regenerate harvested, dead, damaged forests in harvest sites, burnt areas, sparse woodland, clearings, and other lands not covered by forest vegetation and suitable for forest regeneration. Natural forest regeneration is forest *restoration\** based on natural sources of seeds (seeds, tree sprouting and shoot-rooting, etc.) and through assisted natural regeneration by means of soil scarification, thinning of forest stand and undergrowth, conservation of young growth during harvest site development, preserving seed sources, etc. Artificial forest regeneration is mainly carried out using regeneration sources that are artificially introduced by establishing planted forests: by planting of saplings, seedlings, and cuttings or by sowing seeds of forest plants, and tending of them. (Source: based on Order No. 183 of the Ministry of Natural Resources of the Russian Federation On Approval of Forest Regeneration Rules as of July 16 2007 (Registered in the Ministry of Justice of the Russian Federation as of August 20 2007, registration No. 10020)). For the purpose of this standard forest regeneration is understood as all activities, including transfer of regenerated sites into the category of forested lands. (Introduced).

**Formal and informal workers' organization:** Association or union of *workers\**, whether recognized by law or by *The Organization\** or neither, which have the aim of promoting *workers\** rights and to represent *workers\** in dealings with *The Organization\** particularly regarding working conditions and compensation.

**Note:** In Russia such associations could include not only unions, but also other forms of *workers\** organization, for example, Workers Council, various commissions, etc.

**Free, Prior, and Informed Consent (FPIC):** A juridical condition whereby a person or community can be said to have given consent to an action prior to its commencement, based upon a clear appreciation and understanding of the facts, implications and future *impacts\** of that action, and the possession of all relevant facts at the time when consent is given. Free,



prior and informed consent includes the right to grant, modify, withhold or withdraw approval (Source: based on the Preliminary working paper on the principle of Free, Prior and Informed Consent of Indigenous Peoples (...) (E/CN.4/Sub.2/AC.4/2004/4 8 July 2004) of the 22<sup>nd</sup> Session of the United Nations Commission on Human Rights, Sub-commission on the Promotion and Protection of Human Rights, Working Group on Indigenous Populations, 19–23 July 2004).

**Gender equality:** Gender equality or gender equity means that women and men have equal conditions for realizing their full human rights and for contributing to, and benefiting from, economic, social, cultural and political development (Source: adapted from FAO, IFAD and ILO workshop on 'Gaps, trends and current research in gender dimensions of agricultural and rural employment: differentiated pathways out of poverty', Rome, 31 March to 2 April 2009.).

**Genetically modified organism:** An *organism*\* in which the genetic material has been altered in a way that does not occur naturally by mating and/or natural recombination. (Source: based on FSC-POL-30-602 FSC Interpretation on GMO (Genetically Modified Organisms)).

**Genotype:** The genetic constitution of an organism (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V50).

**Habitat:** The place or type of site where an *organism*\* or *population*\* occurs (Source: based on the Convention on Biological Diversity, Article 2).

Interpretation of the term for Russia: **Habitat** is the site with a particular combination of environmental conditions defined by soils, grounds, microclimate, and water and light conditions, and biota necessary for the life cycles of *populations*\* of plants, animals and other living *organisms*\*. Also see *Habitat features*\*.

**Habitat features (key habitats):** *Forest*\* stand attributes and structures, including but not limited to:

- old commercial and non-commercial trees whose age noticeably exceeds the average age of the main canopy;
- trees with special ecological value;
- vertical and horizontal complexity;
- standing dead trees;
- dead fallen wood;
- forest openings attributable to natural disturbances;
- nesting sites;
- small wetlands, bogs, fens;
- ponds;
- areas for procreation;
- areas for feeding and shelter, including seasonal cycles of breeding;
- areas for migration;
- areas for hibernation.

Interpretation of the term for Russia: **Habitat features** (key biotopes) are elements and structures of *forest*\* stands, in which there is a high likelihood of occurrence of *rare*\* and *threatened species*\* of plants and fungi, as well as of species vulnerable and demanding to environmental conditions; they *can*\* include:

- old commercial and non-commercial trees whose age noticeably exceeds the average age of the main canopy;
- trees with special ecological *value*\*;
- stands with varying vertical and horizontal complexity;
- standing dead trees;
- dead fallen wood;
- forest openings attributable to natural disturbances;
- nesting sites;
- small wetlands, bogs, fens;
- ponds;
- areas for procreation;
- areas for feeding and shelter, including seasonal cycles of breeding;



- areas for migration;
- areas for hibernation.

**High Conservation Value (HCV):** Any of the following values:

HCV1: Species Diversity. Concentrations of *biological diversity*\* including endemic species, and *rare*\*, *threatened or endangered*\* species, that are significant at global, regional or national levels.

HCV 2: Landscape-level ecosystems and mosaics. *Intact Forest Landscapes*\*, large landscape-level *ecosystems*\* and ecosystem mosaics that are significant at global, regional or national levels, and that contain viable *populations*\* of the great majority of the naturally occurring species in natural patterns of distribution and abundance.

HCV 3: Ecosystems and habitats. Rare, threatened, or endangered *ecosystems*\*, *habitats*\* or *refugia*\*.

HCV 4: Critical ecosystem services. Basic *ecosystem services*\* in critical situations, including protection of water catchments and control of erosion of vulnerable soils and slopes.

HCV 5: Community needs. Sites and resources fundamental for satisfying the basic necessities of *local communities*\* or *Indigenous Peoples*\* (for example for livelihoods, health, nutrition, water), identified through *engagement*\* with these communities or *Indigenous Peoples*\*.

HCV 6: Cultural values. Sites, resources, *habitats*\* and *landscapes*\* of global or national cultural, archaeological or historical significance, and/or of critical cultural, ecological, economic or religious/sacred importance for the traditional cultures of *local communities*\* or *Indigenous Peoples*\*, identified through *engagement*\* with these *local communities*\* or *Indigenous Peoples*\*. (Source: based on FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**High Conservation Value Areas:** Zones and physical spaces which possess and/or are needed for the existence and maintenance of identified *High Conservation Values*\*

**High grading:** High grading is a tree removal practice in which only the best quality, most valuable timber trees are removed, often without regenerating new tree seedlings or removing the remaining poor quality and suppressed understory trees and, in doing so, degrading the ecological health and commercial value of the forest. High grading stands as a counterpoint to sustainable resource management (Source: based on Glossary of Forest Management Terms. North Carolina Division of Forest Resources. March 2009).

**Indicator:** A quantitative or qualitative variable which can be measured or described, and which provides a means of judging whether a *Management Unit*\* complies with the requirements of an FSC Criterion. Indicators and the associated thresholds thereby define the requirements for responsible forest management at the level of the *Management Unit*\* and are the primary basis of forest evaluation (Source: FSC-STD-01-002 V1-0 FSC Glossary of Terms (2009)).

**Indigenous Peoples:** People and groups of people that can be identified or characterized as follows:

- the key characteristic or Criterion is self-identification as *Indigenous Peoples*\* at the individual level and acceptance by the community as their member;
- historical continuity with pre-colonial and/or pre-settler societies;
- strong link to territories and surrounding natural resources;
- distinct social, economic or political systems;
- distinct language, culture and beliefs;
- form non-dominant groups of society;
- resolve to maintain and reproduce their ancestral environments and systems as distinctive peoples and communities.

(Source: adapted from United Nations Permanent Forum on Indigenous, Factsheet 'Who are Indigenous Peoples' October 2007; United Nations Development Group, 'Guidelines on



Indigenous Peoples' Issues' United Nations 2009, United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples, 13 September 2007).

**Infrastructure:** In the context of forest management, roads, bridges, culverts, log landings, quarries, impoundments, buildings, dams and other structures required in the course of implementing the *management plan*\*.

**Intact Forest Landscape:** a territory within today's global extent of forest cover which contains forest and non-forest *ecosystems*\* minimally influenced by human economic activity, with an area of at least 500 km<sup>2</sup> (50,000 ha) and a minimal width of 10 km (measured as the diameter of a circle that is entirely inscribed within the boundaries of the territory) (Source: Intact Forests / Global Forest Watch. Glossary definition as provided on Intact Forest website. 2006-2014).

**Intellectual property:** Practices as well as knowledge, innovations and other creations of the mind (Source: based on the Convention on Biological Diversity, Article 8(j); and World Intellectual Property Organization. What is Intellectual Property? WIPO Publication No. 450(E)).

Interpretation of the term for Russia: based on the Russian Civil Code (Part 4, No230-FZ as of 18.12.2006) **Intellectual property** is defined as the results of intellectual activities (practices, knowledge, innovations and other creations of the mind) and any symbols of their designation of equal status entitled to legal protection, which recognizes the person who created the results with his/her creative labor as the author and establishes exclusive rights to the use of these results so that any use of them without the right holder's consent is illegal.

**Intensity:** A measure of the force, severity or strength of a management activity or other occurrence affecting the nature of the activity's impacts (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Interested stakeholder:** Any person, group of persons, or entity that has shown an interest, or is known to have an interest, in the activities of a *Management Unit*\*. The following are examples of *interested stakeholders*\*:

- Conservation organizations, for example environmental NGOs;
- Labor (rights) organizations, for example labor unions;
- Human rights organizations, for example social NGOs;
- Local development projects;
- Local governments;
- National government departments functioning in the region;
- FSC National Offices;
- Experts on particular issues, for example High Conservation Values.

(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2)

Note: In Russia *interested stakeholders*\* also refer to experts on biodiversity and social issues, etc.

**Internationally accepted scientific protocol:** A predefined science-based procedure which is either published by an international scientific network or union, or referenced frequently in the international scientific literature.

**Invasive species:** Species that are rapidly expanding outside of their *native range*\*. Invasive species can alter ecological relationships among native species and can affect *ecosystem*\* function and human health (Source: based on World Conservation Union (IUCN). Glossary definitions as provided on IUCN website).

**Keystone species:** Species that most significantly transform *habitats*\*, notwithstanding their relatively small biomass in the *ecosystem*\*, and create conditions for sustainable existence of subordinate species. The duration of restoration cycles of keystone species reflected in the *tree* species composition depends on the life expectancy of several generations of such trees, for example, in boreal forests – at least 700-1000 years. Most complete sets of keystone species are present in *primary forests*\*. An example of a powerful keystone species (edifier) is spruce whose regeneration features, ecological properties and competitive capacity determines its dominance and specific structure of boreal taiga in its most *natural conditions*\*. A similar role is played by large Siberian pine (or Korean pine) and oak trees, which are critical for the existence of a whole complex of associated species in Siberian pine (or Korean pine) and noble hardwood



forests respectively. An example of an animal keystone species is beaver whose activities determine the hydrological regime of the area. Pests regulate the composition of the stand and other vegetation in the forest. (Introduced).

**Lands and territories:** For the purposes of the Principles and Criteria these are lands or territories that *Indigenous Peoples\** or *local communities\** have traditionally owned, or customarily used or occupied, and where access to natural resources is vital to the sustainability of their cultures and livelihoods (Source: based on World Bank safeguard OP 4.10 Indigenous Peoples, section 16 (a). July 2005).

**Landscape:** A geographical mosaic composed of interacting *ecosystems\** resulting from the influence of geological, topographical, soil, climatic, biotic and human interactions in a given area (Source: based on World Conservation Union (IUCN). Glossary definitions as provided on IUCN website).

**Landscape values:** Landscape values can be visualized as layers of human perceptions overlaid on the physical *landscape\**. Some landscape values, like economic, recreation, subsistence value or visual quality are closely related to physical *landscape\** attributes. Other landscape values such as intrinsic or spiritual *value\** are more symbolic in character and are influenced more by individual perception or social construction than physical *landscape\** attributes (Source: based on website of the Landscape Value Institute).

**Legal:** In accordance with primary legislation (national or local laws) or secondary legislation (subsidiary regulations, decrees, orders, etc.). 'Legal' also includes rule-based decisions made by legally competent agencies where such decisions flow directly and logically from the laws and regulations. Decisions made by legally competent agencies may not be legal if they do not flow directly and logically from the laws and regulations and if they are not rule-based but use administrative discretion (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Legally competent:** Mandated in law to perform a certain function (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Legal registration:** National or local *legal\** license or set of permissions to operate as an enterprise, with rights to buy and sell products and/or services commercially. The license or permissions can apply to an individual, a privately-owned enterprise or a publicly-owned corporate entity. The rights to buy and sell products and/or services do not carry the obligation to do so, so *legal\** registration applies also to *Organizations\** operating a *Management Unit\** without sales of products or services; for example, for unpriced recreation or for *conservation\** of *biodiversity\** or *habitat\** (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Note:** Legal registration in the Russian Federation is understood as state registration of legal entities and individual entrepreneurs according to the Federal Law No. 129-FZ dated 08.08.2001 (version as of July 13 2015), *On State Registration of Legal Entities and Individual Entrepreneurs*. Legal registration refers to actions by the authorized federal body of the executive power resulting in inclusion of information on foundation, reorganization and liquidation of legal entities, acquisition of the individual entrepreneur status by individuals, termination of activities as individual entrepreneurs, and other information about legal entities and individual entrepreneurs in the state registers.

The status of the legal entity or individual entrepreneur is confirmed by an extract from the Unified State Register of Legal Entities (EGRYUL) or the Unified State Register of Individual Entrepreneurs (EGRIP).

The right of permanent (without a time limit) forest area use, the right of restricted use of forest area (easement), concession rights, as well as the right of fixed-term use without consideration are regulated by the civil, forest and land laws (Forest Code, 2008).

Ownership of wood and other extracted forest resources, ownership rights and other property rights for forest sites, restrictions (encumbrance) of these rights, their accrual, transfer and termination require state registration according to Federal Law No. 122-FZ dated 21 July 1997, *On State Registration of Real Property Titles and Transactions* (Forest Code, 2008).



**Legal status:** The way in which the *Management Unit\** is classified according to law. In terms of tenure, it means the category of tenure, such as communal land or leasehold or freehold or State land or government land, etc. If the *Management Unit\** is being converted from one category to another (for example, from State land to communal indigenous land) the status includes the current position in the transition process. In terms of administration, legal status could mean that the land is owned by the nation as a whole, is administered on behalf of the nation by a government department, and is leased by a government Ministry to a private sector operator through a concession (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Note:** According to the Russian law and for the purpose of the standard, legal status is a legally recognized organization and legal form of ownership, use and disposal of the *Management Unit\**. By law in the Russian Federation, the land of the *Management Unit\** can be in private, public, municipal ownership or ownership of the subjects of Russian Federation. Forest areas (*lesnye uchastki*) of the *Management Unit\** that belong to the forest fund lands are the federal property. Forest areas within lands of other categories are in public or municipal ownership and can be handed over to: legal entities – for permanent (without a time limit) use, for lease or fixed-term use without consideration; individual persons – for lease or fixed-term use without consideration. Individuals are also entitled to restricted use of another's forest areas (easement). Forest stands of the *Management Unit\** could be sold to the private sector under a purchase and sale agreement, as well as to individuals under a purchase and sale agreement for personal needs. The Russian law also regulates extraction of edible forest resources by individuals and collection of medicinal plants and other *non-timber forest products\** for personal needs. A legal regime of forest use is established in consistency with the protection category of forests. In terms of administrative management, legal status means, for example, that forest areas of the *Management Unit\** are the federal property, are administered by an authorized government body of the subject of the Russian Federation and are leased to the private sector under concession agreements (leaseholds), which define the legal regime of forest use for particular categories (Source: based on the Russian Civil Code, Forest Code and Land Code).

**Living wage:** The remuneration received for a standard work week by a *worker\** in a particular place sufficient to afford a decent standard of living for the *worker\** and her or his family. Elements of a decent standard of living include food, water, housing, education, health care, transport, clothing, and other essential needs including provision in case of unexpected events (Source: A Shared Approach to a Living Wage. ISEAL Living Wage Group. November 2013).

**Note:** Living wage can be defined as the cost of the minimal set of means of subsistence needed to support health and livelihood. The term related to the living wage is the minimum monthly wage – a legally fixed level of minimum payment for labor, below which monthly wages to *workers\** cannot be reduced by employers. Unlike the minimum monthly wage, living wage varies in different regions, and the Russian minimum monthly wage is not always equal to the living wage.

**Local communities:** Communities of any size that are in or adjacent to the *Management Unit\**, and also those that are close enough to have a *significant\* impact\** on the economy or the *environmental values\** of the *Management Unit\** or to have their economies, rights or environments *significantly\** affected by the management activities or the biophysical aspects of the *Management Unit\** (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Local laws:** The whole suite of primary and secondary laws (acts, ordinances, statutes, decrees) which is limited in application to a particular geographical district within a national territory, as well as secondary regulations, and tertiary administrative procedures (rules / requirements) that derive their authority directly and explicitly from these primary and secondary laws. Laws derive authority ultimately from the Westphalian concept of sovereignty of the Nation State (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Interpretation of the term for Russia: Local laws** is the suite of primary and secondary laws (acts, orders, statutes, decrees), which are only applicable to a particular geographical region, including those adopted by state bodies of lower jurisdiction, such as departmental or municipal normatives and regulations developed on the basis of primary and secondary laws.



**Local level:** Level of performance of works or other activities by *workers\** at a specific site directly in the *forest\** or in non-forested areas, manually or using mechanisms and equipment: allocation and development of harvest areas, harvesting and hauling of timber, tree planting, sowing and seeding, assisted natural *forest regeneration\**, construction and maintenance of roads and other *infrastructure\** facilities, fire prevention activities, etc. (Introduced).

**Long-term:** The time-scale of the forest owner or manager as manifested by the objectives of the *management plan\**, the rate of harvesting, and the commitment to maintain permanent forest cover. The length of time involved will vary according to the context and ecological conditions, and will be a function of how long it takes a given *ecosystem\** to recover its natural structure and composition following harvesting or disturbance, or to produce mature or primary conditions (Source: FSC-STD-01002 V1-0 FSC Glossary of Terms (2009)).

**Managed area:** The managed area is an area under management by *The Organization\** being: 1) either a district-level forest management unit (*lesnichestvo*) within the borders defined by a government body that applied for certification; 2) or a concession area awarded to *The Organization\** under the concession contract and for which there is a specific forest use plan (*proyekt osvoyeniya lesov*) (introduced).

**Management objective:** Specific management goals, practices, outcomes, and approaches established to achieve the requirements of this standard.

**Management plan:** The collection of documents, reports, records and maps that describe, justify and regulate the activities carried out by any manager, staff or *The Organization\** within or in relation to the *Management Unit\**, including statements of objectives and policies (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Management plan monitoring:** Follow up and oversight procedures for the purpose of evaluating the achievement of the *management objectives\**. The results of the monitoring activities are utilized in the implementation of *adaptive management\**.

**Management Unit:** A spatial area or areas submitted for FSC certification with clearly defined boundaries managed to a set of explicit long term management objectives which are expressed in a *management plan\**. This area or areas include(s):

- all facilities and area(s) within or adjacent to this spatial area or areas under *legal\** title or management control of, or operated by or on behalf of *The Organization\**, for the purpose of contributing to the *management objectives\**; and
- all facilities and area(s) outside, and not adjacent to this spatial area or areas and operated by or on behalf of *The Organization\**, solely for the purpose of contributing to the *management objectives\**.

(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

Interpretation of the term for Russia with regard to the Russian Forest Code (2006): the **Management Unit\*** includes:

- *managed area (areas)\** within the defined boundaries;
- *infrastructure\** facilities within it (them) and (or) outside, used and (or) operated by *The Organization\** or on behalf of *The Organization\** according to *long-term\** management objectives established in the *management plan\**.

Alongside with *managed areas\**, there could be other areas and facilities operated by *The Organization\** outside the *managed areas\**, which could affect implementation of the *management plan\** and compliance with the requirements of the standard in management activities, for example, construction of roads and other facilities, transportation of goods acquired through forest use, etc.

**Mitigation of negative impact:** Long-term strategy and specific measures with respect to *protection\** of *environmental* and other *values\** to reduce *risks\** of negative *impacts\** resulting from the management activities or *natural hazards\**, to prevent the loss of *values\** or ensure their *restoration\**. (Introduced).



**National laws:** The whole suite of primary and secondary laws (acts, ordinances, statutes, decrees), which is applicable to a national territory, as well as secondary regulations, and tertiary administrative procedures (rules / requirements) that derive their authority directly and explicitly from these primary and secondary laws (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Note:** The Russian national laws include the whole suite of primary and secondary laws (acts, ordinances, statutes, decrees), which are applicable throughout the national territory, as well as legal acts adopted on the level of subjects of the Russian Federation, local self-government bodies that derive their authority directly and explicitly from primary and secondary laws.

**Native ecosystem:** Natural or artificial *ecosystem\** of *local (native) species\**, including *native\** tree species with age and spatial structure typical for specific forest growing conditions. Native natural ecosystems can serve as samples (references) for mapping of *Representative Sample Areas\**. (Source: based on the terms of *natural forest\** and *natural condition\**, *native ecosystem\** of International Generic Indicators (IGI)). (Introduced).

**Native range:** Part of land surface, within which the particular species can be found, and where complete development cycles of its *populations\** take place (Introduced)

**Native species:** Species, subspecies, or lower taxon, occurring within its natural range (past or present) and dispersal potential (that is, within the range it occupies naturally or could occupy without direct or indirect introduction or care by humans) (Source: Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD). Invasive Alien Species Programme. Glossary of Terms as provided on CBD website).

**Natural conditions/native ecosystem:** For the purposes of the Principles and Criteria and any applications of restoration techniques, terms such as 'more natural conditions', 'native ecosystem' provide for managing sites to favor or restore *native species\** and associations of native species that are typical of the locality, and for managing these associations and other *environmental values\** so that they form *ecosystems\** typical of the locality. Further guidelines may be provided in FSC Forest Stewardship Standards (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Interpretation of the term for Russia:** In the context of this standard this term was divided into two: '**native ecosystem**' (see in alphabetical order) and '**natural conditions**' (see below). More natural conditions are typical for *forests\**, whose characteristics are the closest to *primary forests\**. In turn, the least natural conditions are typical for *plantations\**, particularly those consisting of *alien species\**, as well as *degraded forests\**, which lack potential for regeneration of *keystone\* native tree species\** in the foreseeable future.

Treeless ecosystems can be considered as having the least *natural conditions\** if they were formed as a result of natural disasters or management activities and continuously present in sites subject to disturbances (agricultural grasslands, steppified lands, open woodlands, wetlands, farmland); but they can be also in historically formed most *natural conditions\** (grassland communities, shrubland, wetlands, flooded meadows, steppes), as well as occupy intermediate conditions.

Planted forests being established by combination of natural and artificial *forest regeneration\** using species typical for local *natural forests\** are characterized by more *natural conditions\** than planted forests where *alien species\** are used.

Forests of natural origin, including young stands on harvested areas, burnt areas, farmland and other disturbed sites, with a full set of *keystone species\** in the forest stand and/or in young regeneration, typical for *primary forests\** or their samples, belong to a higher level of *natural conditions\** than secondary forests which lost some characteristic tree species.

For the purposes of the Principles and Criteria, methods of *forest regeneration\** and management applied *shall\** generally be aimed at maintenance or *restoration\** of forests composed of the same *native species\** as pre-harvest forests in order to recreate *natural forests\** typical for this location. Source: based on definitions of *natural forest\**, *natural conditions\** and *native ecosystem\** of International Generic Indicators (IGI)).

**Natural forest:** A forest area with many of the principal characteristics and key elements of *native ecosystems\**, such as complexity, structure and *biological diversity\**, including soil



characteristics, flora and fauna, in which all or almost all the trees are *native species*\*, not classified as *plantations*\*. 'Natural forest' includes the following categories:

- forest affected by harvesting or other disturbances, in which trees are being or have been regenerated by a combination of natural and artificial *forest regeneration*\* with species typical of natural forests in that site, and where many of the above-ground and below-ground characteristics of the natural forest are still present. In boreal and north temperate forests which are naturally composed of only one or few tree species, a combination of natural and artificial *forest regeneration*\* to regenerate forest of the same *native species*\*, with most of the principal characteristics and key elements of native *ecosystems*\* of that site, is not by itself considered as conversion to *plantations*\*;
- natural forests which are maintained by traditional *silvicultural*\* practices including natural or assisted natural regeneration;
- well-developed secondary or colonizing forest of *native species*\* which has regenerated in non-forest areas;
- the definition of 'natural forest' may include areas described as wooded *ecosystems*\*, woodland and savannah.

The description of natural forests and their principal characteristics and key elements may be further defined in FSC Forest Stewardship Standards, with appropriate descriptions or examples.

'Natural forest' does not include land which is not dominated by trees, was previously not forest, and which does not yet contain many of the characteristics and elements of native *ecosystems*\*. Young regeneration may be considered as natural forest after some years of ecological progression. FSC Forest Stewardship Standards may indicate when such areas may be excised from the Management Unit, should be restored towards more natural conditions, or may be converted to other land uses. FSC has not developed quantitative thresholds between different categories of forests in terms of area, density, height, etc. FSC Forest Stewardship Standards may provide such thresholds and other guidelines, with appropriate descriptions or examples. Pending such guidance, areas dominated by trees, mainly of native species, may be considered as natural forest. Thresholds and guidelines may cover areas such as:

- other vegetation types and non-forest communities and *ecosystems*\* included in the *Management Unit*\*, including grassland, bushland, wetlands, and open woodlands;
- very young pioneer or colonizing regeneration in a primary succession on new open sites or abandoned farmland, which does not yet contain many of the principal characteristics and key elements of native *ecosystems*\*. This may be considered as natural forest through ecological progression after the passage of years;
- young natural regeneration growing in natural forest areas may be considered as natural forest, even after logging, clear-felling or other disturbances, since many of the principal characteristics and key elements of native ecosystems remain, above-ground and below-ground;
- areas where deforestation and forest degradation have been so severe that they are no longer 'dominated by trees' may be considered as non-forest, when they have very few of the principal above-ground and belowground characteristics and key elements of natural forests. Such extreme degradation is typically the result of combinations of repeated and excessively heavy logging, grazing, farming, fuelwood collection, hunting, fire, erosion, mining, settlements, infrastructure, etc. FSC Forest Stewardship Standards may help to decide when such areas should be excised from the Management Unit, should be restored towards more *natural conditions*\*, or may be converted to other land uses. (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

Interpretation of the term for Russia: **Natural forest** is any *forest*\* that is not classified as *degraded forest*\* or *plantations*\*. Natural forests include *forests*\* of natural and artificial origin that are capable of natural, spontaneous (not assisted by humans) *restoration*\* of *native species*\*, in contrast to artificially established *plantations*\*, in which species composition is artificially maintained using special methods. (Source: based on definitions of *natural forest*\*, *natural conditions*\* and *native ecosystem*\* of International Generic Indicators (IGI)).



**Natural objects:** Living and natural nonliving things and their parts: atmosphere, water bodies, wetlands, geological formations, *landscapes\**, soils, grounds, groundwater, vegetation, communities (*ecosystems\**), *populations\**, individual living *organisms\**, etc. (Introduced).

**Natural hazards:** Disturbances that can present *risks\** to social and *environmental values\** in the *Management Unit\** but that may also comprise important *ecosystem functions\**; examples include drought, flood, fire, landslide, storm, avalanche, etc.

**Non-timber forest products (NTFP):** All products other than timber derived from the *Management Unit\** (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

Interpretation of the term for Russia: According to the Forest Code of the Russian Federation (2008), **non-timber forest resources** include stumps, birch bark, bark of trees and shrubs, brushwood, branch forage, spruce, fir and pine boughs, spruce or other coniferous Christmas trees, moss, forest litter, scirpus (club-rush), common reed and similar forest resources.

Non-timber forest products also include medicinal plants and other plants and mushrooms used as food, fodder or technical raw material, honey and other beekeeping products, conifer resin, wood sap, game animals and fishes, and other minor forest products, apart from timber.

**Objective:** The basic purpose laid down by *The Organization\** for the forest enterprise, including the decision of policy and the choice of means for attaining the purpose (Source: Based on F.C. Osmaston. 1968. *The Management of Forests*. Hafner, New York; and D.R. Johnston, A.J. Grayson and R.T. Bradley. 1967. *Forest Planning*. Faber & Faber, London).

**Obligatory code of practice:** A manual or handbook or other source of technical instruction which *The Organization\** must implement by law (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

Note: Obligatory code of practice refers to legal and standard regulations, agreements, rules, instructions and other procedures, which are mandatory for *The Organization\** by law.

**Occupational accident:** An occurrence arising out of, or in the course of, work which results in fatal or non-fatal injury (Source: International Labour Organization (ILO). Bureau of Library and Information Services. ILO Thesaurus as provided on ILO website).

**Occupational disease:** Any disease contracted as a result of an exposure to *risk\** factors arising from work activity (Source: International Labour Organization (ILO). Bureau of Library and Information Services. ILO Thesaurus as provided on ILO website).

**Occupational injuries:** Any personal injury, disease or death resulting from an *occupational accident\** (Source: International Labour Organization (ILO). Bureau of Library and Information Services. ILO Thesaurus as provided on ILO website).

**Organism:** Any biological entity capable of replication or of transferring genetic material (Source: Council Directive 90/220/EEC).

**The Organization:** The person or entity holding or applying for certification and therefore responsible for demonstrating compliance with the requirements upon which FSC certification is based (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

Note: *The Organization\** in Russia is a legal entity, including self-employed entrepreneurs (*individualny predprinimatel'*).

**Pesticide:** Any substance or preparation prepared or used in protecting plants or wood or other plant products or human health or livestock or *biodiversity\** from pests; in controlling pests; or in rendering such pests harmless. (This definition includes insecticides, rodenticides, acaricides, molluscicides, larvaecides, fungicides and herbicides) (Source: FSC-POL-30-001 FSC Pesticides Policy (2005)).

**Plantation:** A *forest\** area established by planting or sowing with using either *alien\** or *native woody species\**, often with one or few species, regular spacing and even ages, and which lacks most of the principal characteristics and key elements of *natural forests\**. The description of plantations may be further defined in FSC Forest Stewardship Standards, with appropriate descriptions or examples, such as:

- Areas which would initially have complied with this definition of 'plantation' but which,

after the passage of years, contain many or most of the principal characteristics and key elements of native *ecosystems\**, may be classified as *natural forests\**.

- Plantations managed to restore and enhance *biological\** and *habitat\* diversity\**, structural complexity and *ecosystem\* functionality* may, after the passage of years, be classified as *natural forests\**.
- Boreal and north temperate forests which are naturally composed of only one or few tree species, in which a combination of natural and artificial regeneration is used to regenerate forest of the same *native species\**, with most of the principal characteristics and key elements of native *ecosystems\** of that site, may be considered as *natural forest\**, and this *forest regeneration\** is not by itself considered as conversion to plantations.

**Note:** Plantations are established for accelerated growth of tree and (or) shrub species with planned technical characteristics by means of planting or sowing of *alien species\** or *native species\**, as well as intensive tending of the planted stock, often with use of *pesticides\**, *fertilizers\** and *genetically modified species\**; they are characterized by absence of most of principal features and key elements of *natural forests\**.

**Population:** A group of living *organisms\** of one species that inhabits a particular area and interbreeds. The population that existed and interbred throughout many generations may be considered sustainable. (Source: based on Principles of Sustainable Forest Management, 2014). (Introduced).

**Precautionary approach:** An approach requiring that when the available information indicates that management activities pose a *threat\** of severe or irreversible damage to the environment or a *threat\** to human welfare, *The Organization\** will take explicit and effective measures to prevent the *damage\** and avoid the *risks\** to welfare, even when the scientific information is incomplete or inconclusive, and when the vulnerability and sensitivity of *environmental values\** are uncertain (Source: based on Principle 15 of Rio Declaration on Environment and Development, 1992, and Wingspread Statement on the Precautionary Principle of the Wingspread Conference, 23–25 January 1998).

**Note:** *Precautionary approach\** is also applied in the process of managing various *environmental values\** and (or) *HCV\**. The decision on *precautionary approach\* can\** be based on the results of the *risk assessment\** and monitoring and taking into account the reliability and sufficiency of the data collected. If there is any uncertainty regarding the sufficiency of the information or the efficiency of management activities, *The Organization\** takes a decision on suspension of the activity.

**Pre-harvest [condition]:** The diversity, composition, and structure of the *forest\** or *plantation\** prior to felling timber and appurtenant activities such as road building.

**Primary forests:** *Ecosystems\**, which during the lifespan of many generations of tree species developed in the absence of disturbances caused by natural disasters or human activity. They are characterized by a complex spatial and age structure, multiple tree species, and high *biodiversity\**. The structural organization of primary (climax) forests permits for self-regeneration of the whole range of diverse tree species and other *native species\**, and maintenance of *environmental values\** in *resilience\**. Samples of primary forests are preserved in *Intact Forest Landscapes\**, in the least disturbed forests of *PNA\**, may be mapped by *The Organization\** as *Representative Sample Areas\** or *HCV\** (Introduced).

**Principle:** An essential rule or element; in FSC's case, of forest stewardship (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0).

**Protected Nature Areas (PNA):** Area of land, water and air above it, comprising *natural objects\** and complexes of special environmental, scientific, aesthetic, recreational or health improvement significance, which is excluded fully or partially from economic use by the decision of governmental bodies, with special *conservation\** measures adopted for it. (Source: Federal Law No.33-FZ on Protected Nature Areas as of 14 March 1995). (Introduced).

**Protection:** See definition of **Conservation**.



**Protection Area:** See definition of **Conservation Zone**.

**Publicly available:** In a manner accessible to or observable by people generally (Source: Collins English Dictionary, Edition 2003).

Note: An example of the publicly available form of data provision is publication of the data at *The Organization's\** website, in mass media, on printed or other similar media.

**Rare species:** Species that are uncommon or scarce, but not classified as *threatened\**. These species are located in geographically restricted areas or specific *habitats\**, or are scantily scattered on a large scale. They are approximately equivalent to the IUCN (2001) category of Near Threatened (NT), including species that are close to qualifying for, or are likely to qualify for, a threatened category in the near future. They are also approximately equivalent to imperiled species (Source: based on IUCN. (2001). IUCN Red List Categories and Criteria: Version 3.1. IUCN Species Survival Commission. IUCN. Gland, Switzerland and Cambridge, UK).

Note: The Russian legislation (Law No.7-FZ of the Russian Federation On Environmental Protection as of January 10 2002; Law No.148-FZ of the Russian Federation On Wildlife as of March 22, Red Book of the Russian Federation (plants and fungi), 2008; Strategy for Conservation of Rare and Threatened Species of Animals, Plants and Fungi, 2004)) uses the term rare and *threatened species\** where rare species are meant to be either uncommon or scarce species restricted in their geographical span or scattered across a vast area with low densities, or potentially vulnerable species due to their biological characteristics or occurrence in specific *habitats\**; while *threatened species\** are species subject to high *risk\** of extinction in the wild within the whole *species range\** or its *significant\** part.

**Ratified:** The process by which an international law, convention or agreement (including multilateral environmental agreement) is legally approved by a national legislature or equivalent *legal\** mechanism, such that the international law, convention or agreement becomes automatically part of national law or sets in motion the development of national law to give the same *legal\** effect (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Reasonable:** Judged to be fair or appropriate to the circumstances or purposes, based on general experience: Shorter Oxford English Dictionary).

**Reduced impact harvesting:** Harvesting (or logging) using techniques to reduce the impact on the residual stand (Source: based on Guidelines for the Conservation and Sustainable Use of Biodiversity in Tropical Timber Production Forests, IUCN 2006).

**Refugia:** An isolated area where *significant\** changes, typically due to changing climate or by disturbances such as those caused by humans, have not occurred and where plants and animals typical of a region may survive (Source: Glen Canyon Dam, Adaptive Management Program Glossary as provided on website of Glen Canyon Dam).

**Regeneration of forest cover:** Regeneration of forest cover is understood for the purpose of this standard as a set of *forest regeneration\** activities and tending cuts in young stands. (Introduced)

**Representative Sample Areas:** Portions of the *Management Unit\** delineated for the purpose of conserving or restoring viable examples of an *ecosystem\** that would occur under *natural conditions\** in that geographical region.

Note: **Representative Sample Areas of native ecosystems** are a set of *ecosystems\** (including the non-forest ones) typical for the locality and occurring under most *natural conditions\**. They are identified in addition to the *Protected Areas Network\** within the *Management Unit\** in various *landscapes\** (i.e. on different terrains – at floodplains, river terraces, slopes, water divides, gullies, ravines (balkas), bogged depressions, etc.). The objective is to *protect\** or *restore\** samples of all types of *ecosystems\** of the locality in *natural conditions\** and the whole diversity of species represented there. The network ensures *resilience\** of *ecosystems\** of the *Management Unit\**, provides an opportunity to assess and monitor the effect of management activity on *ecosystems\** in comparison to sample areas for the purpose of *adaptive management\**.



Representative Sample Areas of *ecosystems\** can include a series of forest types of major forest formations in various terrains, rare and unique *ecosystems\** in their *natural conditions\**, *ecosystems\** in extreme or marginal conditions. Representative Sample Areas of *ecosystems\** are mapped at the *Management Unit\** level as independent territorial units taking into account *protected areas\** in order to assign a *conservation\** status to them that guarantees their voluntary conservation as per the internal policies, *verifiable targets\** and procedures of *The Organization\**, or in order to impose the *legal\** status to them according to current norms and regulations (protective forests, Special Protection Forest Habitats (SPFH), PNA); can partially coincide with *HCV\** areas, as well as with areas of protective forests, SPFH, PNA.

**Resilience:** The ability of a system to maintain key functions and processes in the face of stresses or pressures by either resisting or adapting to change. Resilience can be applied to both ecological systems and social systems (Source: IUCN World Commission on Protected Areas (IUCN-WCPA). 2008. Establishing Marine Protected Area Networks – Making it Happen. Washington D.C.: IUCN-WCPA National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration and the Nature Conservancy).

**Restore / Restoration:** These words are used in different senses according to the context and in everyday speech. In some cases 'restore'\* means to repair the damage done to *environmental values\** that resulted from management activities or other causes. In other cases 'restore'\* means the formation of more *natural conditions\** in sites which have been heavily degraded or converted to other land uses. In the Principles and Criteria, the word 'restore' is not used to imply the recreation of any particular previous, pre-historic, pre-industrial or other pre-existing ecosystem (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

*The Organization\** is not necessarily obliged to *restore\** those *environmental values\** that have been affected by factors beyond the control of *The Organization\**, for example by natural disasters, by climate change, or by the *legally\** authorized activities of third parties, such as public infrastructure, mining, hunting or settlement, etc. FSC-POL-20-003 The Excision of Areas from the Scope of Certification describes the processes by which such areas may be excised from the area certified, when appropriate.

*The Organization\** is also not obliged to *restore\** *environmental values\** that may have existed at some time in the historic or pre-historic past, or that have been negatively affected by previous owners or organizations. However, *The Organization\** is expected to take *reasonable\** measures to mitigate, control and prevent environmental degradation which is continuing in the *Management Unit\** as a result of such previous impacts.

**Riparian zone:** Interface between land and a *water body\**, and the vegetation associated with it.

Interpretation of the term for Russia: **Riparian zones** include areas adjacent to *water bodies\** that, according to the Water Code of the Russian Federation, refer to water protection zones and near-shore protective belts (Source: Water Code of the Russian Federation No. 74-FZ as of June 03 2006).

**Risk:** The probability of an unacceptable negative *impact\** arising from any activity in the *Management Unit\** combined with its seriousness in terms of consequences (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Risk assessment:** A systematic process of identifying the probability of occurrence of potential *consequences\**, which are likely to cause *significant\** environmental, social and economic damage arising from the use of available means, methods, technologies and practices of management activities or managerial decisions, for the purpose of selecting the ones that prevent and (or) *mitigate\** such *consequences\**. (Introduced).

**Scale:** A measure of the extent to which a management activity or event affects an *environmental value\** or a *Management Unit\**, in time or space. An activity with a small or low spatial scale affects only a small proportion of the forest each year, an activity with a small or low temporal scale occurs only at long intervals (Source: FSC-STD- 01-001 V5-2).

**Scale, intensity and risk:** See individual definitions of the terms 'scale', 'intensity', and 'risk'.



**Shall:** Indicates instructions of the standard strictly to be followed. See also **Shall not, Should/should not**.

**Shall not:** Indicates prohibition. Also see **Shall, Should/should not**.

**Should/ and should not:** indicates the recommendation. Also see **Shall, Shall not**.

**Significant:** For the purposes of *Principle*\* 9, *HCVs*\* 1, 2 and 6 there are three main forms of recognizing significance:

- a designation, classification or recognized conservation status, assigned by an international agency such as IUCN or Birdlife International;
- a designation by national or regional authorities, or by a responsible national conservation organization, on the basis of its concentration of *biodiversity*\*;
- a voluntary recognition by the manager, owner or *Organization*\*, on the basis of available information, or of the known or suspected presence of a significant *biodiversity*\* concentration, even when not officially designated by other agencies.

Any one of these forms will justify designation as *HCVs*\* 1, 2 and 6. Many regions of the world have received recognition for their biodiversity importance, measured in many different ways. Existing maps and classifications of priority areas for *biodiversity*\* *conservation*\* play an essential role in identifying the potential presence of *HCVs*\* 1, 2 and 6 (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

Note: The term 'significant' is used in the standard in another, more general meaning: "measured, assessed and recognized importance that is exceptionally superior to others".

**Silviculture:** The art and science of controlling the establishment, growth, composition, health and quality of forests and woodlands to meet the targeted diverse needs and values of landowners and society on a sustainable basis (Source: Nieuwenhuis, M. 2000. Terminology of Forest Management. IUFRO World Series Vol. 9. IUFRO 4.04.07 SilvaPlan and SilvaVoc).

**Stakeholder:** See definitions for '**affected stakeholder**' and '**interested stakeholder**'.

**Statutory law or statute law:** The body of law contained in Acts of Parliament (national legislature) (Source: Oxford Dictionary of Law).

Note: statutory law is a law set by legislation enacted by a national body of legislature; in Russia, provisions of statutes are made by legislative acts at the level of federal laws. (Source: based on the Constitution of the Russian Federation, 12.12.1993).

**Sustainable forest management:** sustainability of forest use is timber harvesting, which is planned and/or implemented on such a scale\*, in such volumes and by such methods that ensure that the amount and quality of the resource and ecosystem services\* are not steadily decreased over the rotation period or permanently long and that no loss occurs in the diversity of tree species. (Source: based on the Glossary of Terms by the State Forestry Agency of the Russian Federation, 2014). (Introduced)

**Sustainable timber harvesting level:** such a level of timber harvest that does not lead to depletion of timber resource in short- and long-term. It can be calculated annually or per other period of time. (Introduced)

**Tenure:** Socially defined agreements held by individuals or groups, recognized by *legal*\* statutes or customary practice, regarding the 'bundle of rights and duties' of ownership, holding, access and/or usage of a particular land unit or the associated resources there within (such as individual trees, plant species, water, minerals, etc.) (Source: World Conservation Union (IUCN). Glossary definitions provided on IUCN website).

Note: In Russian legislation, tenure refers to any *legal*\* use of land and forest resources (through concession or ownership of land or forest resources).

**The Organization:** The person or entity holding or applying for certification and therefore responsible for demonstrating compliance with the requirements upon which FSC certification is based (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).



Note: *The Organization\** in Russia is a legal entity, including self-employed entrepreneurs (*individualny predprinimatel'*).

**Threat:** An indication or warning of impending or likely damage or negative *impacts\** (Source: based on Oxford English Dictionary).

**Threatened species:** Species that meet the IUCN (2001) criteria for Vulnerable (VU), Endangered (EN) or Critically Endangered (CR), and are facing a high, very high or extremely high risk of extinction in the wild. These categories may be reinterpreted for FSC purposes according to official national classifications (which have *legal\** significance) and to local conditions and *population\** densities (which should affect decisions about appropriate conservation measures) (Source: based on IUCN. (2001). IUCN Red List Categories and Criteria: Version 3.1. IUCN Species Survival Commission. IUCN. Gland, Switzerland and Cambridge, UK).

Note: see the definition for '**Rare species**'.

**Timely manner:** As promptly as circumstances reasonably allow; not intentionally postponed by *The Organization\**; in compliance with *applicable laws\**, contracts, licenses or invoices.

**Traditional knowledge:** Information, know-how, skills and practices that are developed, sustained and passed on from generation to generation within a community, often forming part of its cultural or spiritual identity (Source: based on the definition by the World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO). Glossary definition as provided under Policy / Traditional Knowledge on the WIPO website).

**Uphold:** To acknowledge, respect, sustain and support (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Use rights:** Rights for the use of resources of the *Management Unit\** that can be defined by local custom, mutual agreements, or prescribed by other entities holding access rights. These rights may restrict the use of particular resources to specific levels of consumption or particular harvesting techniques (Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2).

**Value:** Significance of something in terms of manifested qualities and functions, which, among other things, can increase the significance of the carrier of this value. The value is increased if the manifested qualities are being depleted or value carriers become rare and unique, or if the functions become irreplaceable. The standard considers *environmental values\**, *high conservation values\**, values of various parties in the field of social, cultural, spiritual and aesthetic, religious and economic issues. (Introduced).

**Verifiable targets:** Specific goals, such as desired future *forest\** conditions, established to measure progress towards the achievement of each of the *management objectives\**. These goals are expressed as clear outcomes, such that their attainment can be verified and it is possible to determine whether they have been accomplished or not.

**Very limited portion:** The area affected *shall\** not exceed 0.5% of the area of the *Management Unit\** in any one year, nor affect a total of more than 5% of the area of the *Management Unit\** (Source: based on FSC-STD-01-002 V1-0 FSC Glossary of Terms, 2009).

**Waste management:** Activity on collection, accumulation, cleaning, transportation and recycling of *waste\** within the *Management Unit\** being organized in a way to stop accumulation of merchantable *waste materials\** and prevent pollution and littering of *landscapes\** by waste from processing of timber and other products, *waste materials\** generated by cars, fuels and lubricants, other *chemicals\**, and domestic waste. (Introduced).

**Waste materials:** unusable or unwanted substances or by-products, such as:

- Hazardous waste, including chemical waste and batteries;
- Containers;
- Motor and other fuels and oils;
- Rubbish including metals, plastics and paper; and
- Abandoned buildings, machinery and equipment.

Note: Waste materials may also include residues generated during processing of timber and other products.



**Water bodies (including water courses):** Seasonal, temporary, and permanent brooks, creeks, streams, rivers, ponds, and lakes. Water bodies include *riparian\** or wetland *ecosystems\**, lakes, swamps, bogs and springs.

Note: The term *water body\* shall\** be understood as defined by the Water Code of the Russian Federation (2006) – natural or artificial water body, watercourse or any other object, in which forms and attributes of permanent or temporary concentration of water are characteristic of the water regime. Surface water bodies include: 1) seas or their parts (straits, gulfs, including bays, lagoons and others); 2) watercourses (rivers, streams and channels) with manifested channels; 3) bodies of standing water (lakes, ponds, flooded open pits and reservoirs); 4) swamps, bogs; 5) natural springs (springs, geysers); 6) glaciers, snowfields. Groundwater bodies include: 1) groundwater basins; 2) aquifers. (Source: Water Code of the Russian Federation, No.74-FZ as of June 03 2006).

**Wetlands:** Transitional areas between terrestrial and aquatic systems in which the water table is usually at or near the surface or the land is covered by shallow water (Source: Cowardin, L.M., Carter, V., Golet, F.C., Laroe, E.T. 1979. Classification of Wetlands and Deepwater Habitats of the United States. DC US Department: Washington).

Under the Ramsar Convention, wetlands can include tidal mudflats, natural ponds, marshes, potholes, wet meadows, bogs, peatlands, freshwater swamps, mangroves, lakes, rivers and even some coral reefs (Source: IUCN, No Date, IUCN Definitions – English).

**Workers:** All employed persons including public employees as well as 'selfemployed' persons. This includes part-time and seasonal employees, of all ranks and categories, including laborers, administrators, supervisors, executives, contractor employees as well as self-employed contractors and sub-contractors (Source: ILO Convention C155 Occupational Safety and Health Convention, 1981).



Forest Stewardship Council®

---

**ic.fsc.org**

FSC International Center gGmbH  
Adenauerallee 134 · 53113 Bonn · Germany



All Rights Reserved FSC® International 2020 FSC®F000100